

*This is the book of adventures of Mark Twain's memorable characters – Prince Edward and Tom Canty, a pauper from Offal Court, who, as fate willed it, looked like twins. And what turned out of it Mark Twain tells now in a humorous and amusing way, now with a biting satire.*



Beginner

Elementary

Для начинающих

Pre-Intermediate

Для продолжающих  
первого уровня

Intermediate

Для продолжающих  
второго уровня

Upper Intermediate

Для продолжающих  
третьего уровня

Advanced

Для совершенствующихся

ISBN 978-5-8112-3352-6



9 785811 233526

АЙРИС-ПРЕСС

Mark Twain THE PRINCE AND THE PAUPER

Марк Твен ПРИНЦ И НИЩИЙ



АНГЛИЙСКИЙ клуб

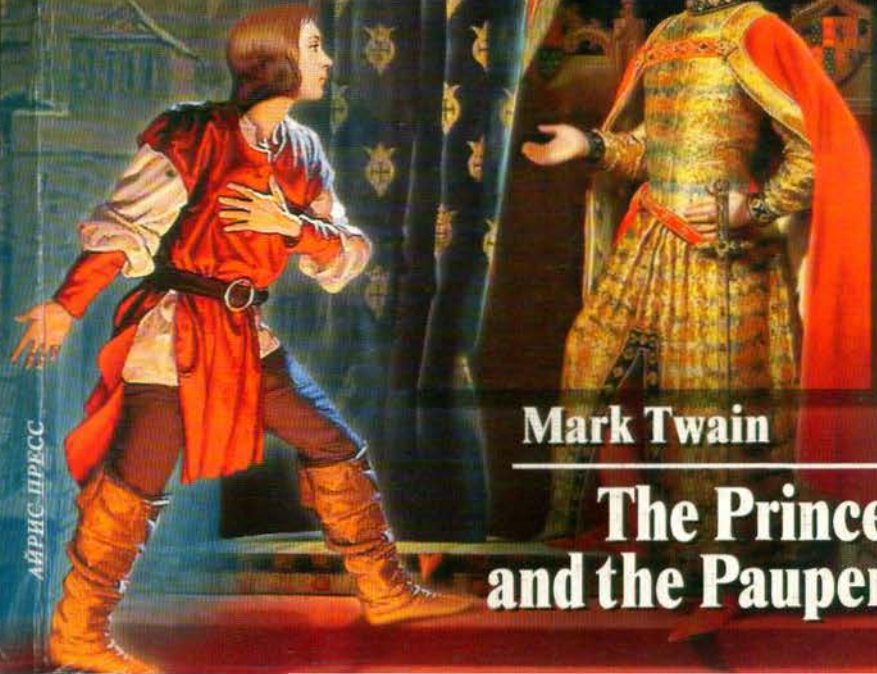
Марк Твен

# Принц и нищий

Intermediate

Домашнее чтение

АЙРИС-ПРЕСС



Mark Twain

The Prince  
and the Pauper

Intermediate



**АНГЛИЙСКИЙ клуб**

---

Домашнее чтение

**Марк Твен**  
**ПРИНЦ И НИЩИЙ**

*Составление и адаптация  
Г. К. Магидсон-Степановой  
Упражнения А. Е. Хабенской*

МОСКВА



АЙРИС ПРЕСС

2008

УДК 811.111(075)  
ББК 81.2Англ-93  
Т26

Серия «Английский клуб» включает книги и учебные пособия, рассчитанные на пять этапов изучения английского языка: Elementary (для начинающих), Pre-Intermediate (для продолжающих первого уровня), Intermediate (для продолжающих второго уровня), Upper Intermediate (для продолжающих третьего уровня) и Advanced (для совершенствующихся).

Серийное оформление А. М. Драгового

Твен, М.

Т26 Принц и нищий / Марк Твен; сост. и адаптация Г. К. Магидсон-Степановой; упражнения А. Е. Хабенской. — М.: Айрис-пресс, 2008. — 352 с.: ил. — (Английский клуб). — (Домашнее чтение).

ISBN 978-5-8112-3352-6

В основу адаптации положена известная повесть американского писателя Марка Твена «Принц и нищий». Текст каждой главы книги снабжен комментарием, а также упражнениями, направленными на проверку понимания текста, отработку и закрепление навыков владения грамматическим и лексическим материалом, развитие коммуникативных умений. Упражнения составлены в соответствии с новейшими требованиями методики. В конце пособия приводится словарь.

Книга адресована учащимся 5–8 классов средних школ, лицеев, гимназий.

ББК 81.2Англ-93  
УДК 811.111(075)

© ООО «Издательство «АЙРИС-пресс», оформление, составление, адаптация текста, упражнения, 2003

ISBN 978-5-8112-3352-6



## Chapter I THE PRINCE AND THE PAUPER

I am going to tell you a story that took place many, many years ago. It was told to me<sup>1</sup> by my father, who heard it from his father. And his father had heard it<sup>2</sup> from his father... and so on.<sup>3</sup> For three hundred years and more, the fathers had told it to their sons.

I do not know, whether it is history, or only legend. But the story says that it happened in the second quarter of the sixteenth century.

<sup>1</sup> It was told to me — Она была рассказана мне

<sup>2</sup> had heard it — услышал ее

<sup>3</sup> and so on — и так далее

In the old city of London, on a cold autumn day two boys were born. One boy was born to a poor family of the name of Canty, who did not want him. The other English child was born to a rich family of the name of Tudor.<sup>1</sup> The Tudor family wanted the boy very much.

All England wanted him too, that is why it was a happy day for the people of England. Everybody took a holiday. Nobody wanted to work. The rich and the poor celebrated this great holiday. For several days and nights the people danced and sang in the streets and squares of London.

Everybody talked only about the new baby, Edward<sup>2</sup> Tudor, Prince of Wales.<sup>3</sup> He lay in silks and did not know that he made the people of England so happy. He did not know anything about the bright illumination or about beautiful banners hanging from every balcony.

But nobody talked about the other baby, Tom Canty. He lay in his poor rags and did not know that the Canty family, the family of paupers, did not want him. They did not want him at all. Nobody wanted Tom Canty, the son of John Canty.

<sup>1</sup> **Tudor** [ˈtʃʊdə] — Тюдор (*Тюдоры — королевская династия в Англии, правившая с 1485 по 1603 год*)

<sup>2</sup> **Edward** [ˈedwəd] — Эдуард (*Эдуард VI (1537–1553) из династии Тюдоров, сын Генриха VIII. Вступил на престол в 1547 году в 9-летнем возрасте*)

<sup>3</sup> **Prince of Wales** [ˈprɪns əv ˈweɪlz] — принц Уэльский (*титул наследника английского престола*)

## Activities

### ? **Checking Comprehension**

#### 1 **Say who:**

- 1) was born to a poor family.
- 2) was born to a rich family.
- 3) celebrated the great holiday.
- 4) talked about Tom Canty.
- 5) talked about Edward Tudor.
- 6) lay in silks.
- 7) lay in rags.
- 8) sang and danced in the streets of London.

#### 2 **Say if the statement is true or false. Correct the false one.**

- 1) The story happened in the middle of the sixteenth century.
- 2) Two boys were born on a cold summer day.
- 3) The boys were born to a poor family.
- 4) The family wanted the boys very much.
- 5) All people took a holiday to celebrate this great event.
- 6) There were beautiful decorations on every balcony.
- 7) Tom Canty and Edward Tudor were happy boys.

#### 3 **Answer the following questions.**

- 1) When did the story happen?
- 2) Who told the author this story?
- 3) Where did the story take place?
- 4) What was the weather like on that day?

- 5) Who was born to a poor family?
- 6) Who was born to a rich family?
- 7) Which family wanted the boy?
- 8) Which family did not want the boy?
- 9) How did London celebrate the birth of the two boys?
- 10) What was London like on the day of the celebration?

### Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

- 1 Fill in the missing forms of the verbs in the box , then say in what situations they are used in the story.

tell		told
	heard	
know		known
	said	
happen		
		been
	took	taken
want		
sing	sang	
dance		
	lay	
	hung	

- 2 Fill in the missing prepositions.

It happened \_\_\_\_\_ the sixteenth century. This story was told \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ my father. Tom Canty was born \_\_\_\_\_ a poor family. Edward Tudor was born \_\_\_\_\_ a rich family. One baby lay \_\_\_\_\_ rags, the other lay \_\_\_\_\_ silks. The poor baby was the son \_\_\_\_\_ John Canty. The rich baby was the son \_\_\_\_\_ the king. The birth \_\_\_\_\_ the prince made the people of England very happy. They celebrated this great event \_\_\_\_\_ several days and nights.

### Discussing the Text

- 1 Say why:

- 1) nobody wanted Tom Canty.
- 2) everybody wanted Edward Tudor.

- 2 Imagine that you are:

- **John Canty.** Say why you are not happy to have a son.
- **The king.** Say why all England is happy when your son is born.

## Chapter II TOM'S EARLY LIFE<sup>1</sup>

Several years passed. London was fifteen hundred years old, and was a great town — for that time. A hun-

<sup>1</sup> Tom's Early life — Детство Тома

dred thousand people lived in it. The streets were narrow and dirty, especially<sup>1</sup> in the part where the Canty family lived, which was not far from London Bridge.

Tom spent his early years in a very old and dirty house. It was made of wood like all the other houses in that street, and like all the other houses it had small and dirty windows. The street was called Offal Court.<sup>2</sup> The house was full of poor families. Tom's family had one room on the third floor.

Tom's parents had a bed, but Tom, his grandmother who lived with them and his two sisters slept on the floor. At night they lay down on rags and covered themselves with rags.

Tom's sisters were twins. They were fifteen years old, and their names were Bet and Nan. They wore dirty clothes and their faces and hands were always dirty too. But they were good-hearted girls. Their mother was a nice woman who loved her children very much. But Tom's father and the grandmother were not nice people, they were very, very bad. They often drank, and when they were drunk they fought each other and beat the children.

Tom's father, John Canty, was a thief and Tom's grandmother was a beggar. They made beggars of the children, but they could not make thieves of them.

Among the thieves and beggars who lived in the house there was a man who was neither a thief nor a beggar. He was a good old man, a priest, who lived on a small

pension of a few farthings.<sup>1</sup> He loved children and was always ready to help them. His name was Father Andrew. The good old priest taught Tom how to read and write. He also taught him a little Latin.

He told Tom many wonderful stories and legends about kings and princes. He also gave Tom books to read. Tom liked to listen to Father Andrew's stories and read the books which the old man gave him. By and by<sup>2</sup> the stories Tom heard and the books he read made some changes in his speech and his manners. Not only the children of Offal Court talked about Tom's correct speech and his good manners. Their parents began to talk about Tom as the most clever boy who could explain to them many things that they did not understand. He really knew so much.

Soon Tom organized a royal court! When the children played, Tom always was the prince his comrades were lords and ladies and the royal family. After the game was over, the mock prince<sup>3</sup> went out to beg a few farthings, and if came home without any money his father gave him a hard beating and sent him to bed hungry.

At night when he lay in the dark on his dirty rags he forgot his father's beatings and thought about kings and princes who were clean and well dressed. Tom wanted to be clean and well dressed too. And he wanted to see a real prince with his own eyes. His dreams helped him to forget his hunger. His mother often came up to him in the mid-

---

<sup>1</sup> **farthing** ['fɑ:ðɪŋ] — фартинг (Самая мелкая разменная английская монета, равная 1/4 пенни. Фартинги изъяты из обращения в 1968 году)

<sup>2</sup> **By and by** — Вскоре

<sup>3</sup> **the mock prince** — мнимый принц

---

<sup>1</sup> **especially** [ɪs 'peʃəli] — особенно

<sup>2</sup> **Offal Court** ['ɒfəl 'kɔ:t] — Двор отбросов (*offal* — отбросы, падаль)

dle of the night. She gave him a piece of bread because she loved him and did not want him to be hungry.<sup>1</sup>

Tom's wish to see a real prince became stronger and stronger. Then came the time when he could not think of anything else. And he sometimes imagined himself a prince who lived in a beautiful palace and had a wonderful life.

## Activities

### ? *Checking Comprehension*

#### 1 Say what:

- 1) was narrow and dirty in London.
- 2) was not far from London Bridge.
- 3) was made of wood in London.
- 4) was called Offal Court.
- 5) Father Andrew gave Tom.
- 6) were Tom's sisters names.
- 7) Tom organized.
- 8) Tom thought about at night.
- 9) Tom wanted to be.
- 10) helped Tom to forget his hunger.
- 11) his mother gave him at night.
- 12) Father Andrew taught Tom.

#### 2 Say who:

- 1) lived in Offal Court.

---

<sup>1</sup> **did not want him to be hungry** — не хотела, чтобы он голодал

- 2) slept on the floor.
- 3) loved Tom and his sisters.
- 4) drank very often.
- 5) was a thief.
- 6) was a beggar.
- 7) taught Tom to read and write.
- 8) gave Tom a hard beating.
- 9) sent him to bed hungry.

#### 3 Put the sentences in the right order.

- 1) Soon Tom organized a royal court.
- 2) Father Andrew often helped the children.
- 3) The Canty family and many other poor families lived in Offal Court.
- 4) Tom's father and grandmother were often drunk and beat the children.
- 5) The children slept on the floor and covered themselves with rags.
- 6) Tom read many books that Father Andrew gave him.
- 7) Tom wanted to be clean and well dressed.
- 8) The books helped Tom to understand many things.
- 9) Tom imagined himself a prince living in a beautiful palace.
- 10) Their mother loved her children very much.

#### 4 Answer the following questions.

- 1) How many people lived in London in those days?
- 2) What were the streets like?
- 3) Where did the Canty family live?

- 4) What was the house where Tom spent his early years like?
- 5) How many rooms did the Canty family have?
- 6) How large was the Canty family?
- 7) How old were his sisters?
- 8) What did they look like?
- 9) What was Tom's mother like?
- 10) How did Tom's father and grandmother treat (обращались) the children?
- 11) What was Father Andrew like?
- 12) What stories did he tell Tom?
- 13) What games did Tom and his friends play?
- 14) How did Tom's father treat him if Tom came home without money?
- 15) What did Tom dream about at night?

 **Working with Vocabulary and Grammar**

**1 Match the adjectives with the suitable nouns. Use them to describe the events from the story.**

- |                     |            |
|---------------------|------------|
| 1) great            | a) people  |
| 2) narrow and dirty | b) manners |
| 3) early            | c) stories |
| 4) poor             | d) years   |
| 5) good-hearted     | e) family  |
| 6) nice             | f) streets |
| 7) bad              | g) girls   |
| 8) old              | h) woman   |
| 9) small            | i) man     |
| 10) wonderful       | j) pension |
| 11) correct         | k) speech  |

- |               |           |
|---------------|-----------|
| 12) good      | l) palace |
| 13) clever    | m) prince |
| 14) royal     | n) boy    |
| 15) mock      | o) court  |
| 16) beautiful | p) town   |

**2 Fill in the missing prepositions.**

The Canty family lived not \_\_\_\_\_ . \_\_\_\_\_ London Bridge. The family lived \_\_\_\_\_ the old and dirty house. The house was full \_\_\_\_\_ poor families. Tom's family lived \_\_\_\_\_ the third floor. The children slept \_\_\_\_\_ the floor. They covered themselves \_\_\_\_\_ rags. Tom's father made beggars \_\_\_\_\_ the children. Father Andrew lived \_\_\_\_\_ a small pension \_\_\_\_\_ a few farthings. Tom liked to listen \_\_\_\_\_ Father Andrew's stories. Tom could explain \_\_\_\_\_ . his parents many things. After the game was \_\_\_\_\_ Tom went \_\_\_\_\_ to beg \_\_\_\_\_ the streets. If he came home \_\_\_\_\_ money his father beat him and sent him \_\_\_\_\_ bed hungry. Tom often thought \_\_\_\_\_ kings and princes \_\_\_\_\_ night. He wanted to see a real prince \_\_\_\_\_ his own eyes. His mother often gave him a piece \_\_\_\_\_ bread \_\_\_\_\_ the middle \_\_\_\_\_ the night.

**3 Fill in the missing forms of the verbs. Say in which situations they are used in the story.**

spend		spent
sleep	slept	



drink		drunk
	fought	fought
	beat	beaten
teach	taught	
	gave	
understand	understood	
	went	
send		sent
	saw	seen
wear		worn
think		thought

- 2) Tom's mother loved her children.
- 3) Father Andrew was a good man.
- 4) Tom was a very clever boy.

**3 Imagine that you are:**

- Tom
- one of his sisters
- Tom's mother
- Tom's father
- Father Andrew

- 1) Speak what your life is like.
- 2) Speak what the street where you live is like.
- 3) Speak what your house is like.
- 4) Speak what the people (the children) around you are like.

**4 Speak about yourself honestly.**

- 1) Do you live far from your school?
- 2) What do you wear at school, at home, when you go for a walk?
- 3) Do you think you are always clean and well dressed?
- 4) Do you think you have good manners? What about your speech? Is it correct?
- 5) Do you have a twin brother or sister, or younger (elder) brother or sister?
- 6) Do you sometimes fight each other? Why or why not?
- 7) Do you help each other? If yes, how? If not, why?

 **Discussing the Text**

**1 Say why:**

- 1) the children slept on the floor.
- 2) Tom's father wanted to make thieves and beggars of his children.
- 3) Father Andrew often helped the children.
- 4) Tom could explain many things.
- 5) Tom organized a royal court.

**2 Prove that:**

- 1) Tom's family was very poor.

### Chapter III

## TOM'S MEETING WITH THE PRINCE

On that day Tom got up hungry and went away hungry. His thoughts were full of his night's dreams, his usual dreams about palaces, kings and princes. He went along the streets but he did not see where he was going.<sup>1</sup> He took one turning, then a second one, and then he walked straight on and on.<sup>2</sup> By and by he came to the square in the centre of the city.

There he saw Westminster<sup>3</sup> — the king's palace. He had always wished to see<sup>4</sup> a king's palace. Here was the king's palace! Could he hope to see a prince now — a real prince?

At each side of the gates stood a guard. There were many men, women and children standing around the square. They hoped to see the Prince of Wales or some other member of the royal family.

Poor little Tom in his rags came up to the gates. Suddenly he saw a good-looking boy through the bars of the gates. He was beautifully dressed. On his head he had a bright red cap. Oh! He was a prince, a liv-

---

<sup>1</sup> **he was going** — он шел

<sup>2</sup> **He took one turning... then he walked straight on and on** — Он свернул на одну улицу... затем пошел прямо, не сворачивая

<sup>3</sup> **Westminster** ['westmɪnstə] — Вестминстер (*Вестминстерский дворец — бывшая резиденция королей, ныне здание парламента*)

<sup>4</sup> **He had always wished to see** — Он давно хотел видеть

ing prince, a real prince! Before Tom knew what he was going to do, he put his face against the bars of the gates<sup>1</sup> to have a better look at the prince. The next moment one of the soldiers gave him a blow and pushed him away from the gates. Tom fell down. The soldier said:

“Get out of here,<sup>2</sup> you young beggar!” The crowd that stood near the gates laughed. But the young prince jumped to the gates. His face and his eyes were angry. He cried out:

“How can you do that to the poor lad? Open the gates and let him in!”

The crowd shouted then: “Long live the Prince of Wales!”<sup>3</sup>

The soldier opened the gates and Tom in his dirty rags passed in.

Edward Tudor said:

“Poor lad, you look tired and hungry. Come with me.” The prince took Tom to a rich apartment in the palace. He called this room his cabinet. He ordered one of his servants to bring Tom something to eat. For the first time in his life Tom saw and ate such food. Then the prince sat near by and asked questions while Tom ate.

“What is your name, lad?”

“Tom Canty, sir.”

“Where do you live, Tom Canty?”

---

<sup>1</sup> **against the bars of the gates** — к решетке у ворот

<sup>2</sup> **Get out of here** — Убирайся отсюда

<sup>3</sup> **Long live the Prince of Wales!** — Да здравствует принц Уэльский!

“I live in the city, sir. In Offal Court.”

“Offal Court? I have never heard about this place. Have you parents?”

“Yes, sir, I have parents. I also have a grandmother and twin-sisters, Nan and Bet. I don’t love my grandmother. I can’t forget her beatings.”

A terribly angry look came into the little prince’s eyes, and he cried out:

“What! Beatings?”

“Yes, sir. She beats me very often.”

“How can she beat you? You are so small and so thin! I shall order to throw her into prison for that! Are your parents good to you?”<sup>1</sup>

“My father is not, sir. But my mother is very good to me. And my twin-sisters are like her.”

“How old are they?”

“They are fifteen, sir.”

The prince said, “I have sisters and cousins too. Lady Jane Grey is my cousin, Lady Elizabeth and Lady Mary are my sisters. Lady Elizabeth is very nice, but Lady Mary is not. She does not even let her servants smile... Do your sisters not let their servants smile either?”<sup>2</sup>

“They? Oh, sir, do you think that *they* have servants?”

The little prince looked at the little pauper for a moment, then said:

---

<sup>1</sup> **Are your parents good to you?** — твои родители к тебе хорошо относятся?

<sup>2</sup> **Do your sisters not let their servants smile either?** — Твои сестры тоже не позволяют их слугам улыбаться?

“And why not? Who helps them to dress in the morning and undress at night?”

“Oh, sir, nobody does! Do you think they take off their dresses at night and sleep without clothes like the beasts?”

“But have they only one dress?”

“Of course, sir. They do not have two bodies each! They have only one body, each of them, so they have one dress.”

The prince laughed.

“Oh, excuse me, please. But now I’m going to help them. Soon your sisters will have many dresses and many servants who will help them to dress and undress. No, don’t thank me, it is nothing. You speak well, lad, your speech is correct and beautiful. Where did you learn?”

“The good priest that is called Andrew taught me and gave me his books to read,” said Tom.

“But tell me more about your Offal Court. Is your life hard or pleasant there?” the prince asked again.

“It is hard when I’m hungry, sir. But it has many good things when I am not hungry. We, lads of Offal Court, play together many different games. We fight to see who is the strongest. We run to see which of us is the fastest...”

“How wonderful! Tell me more!”

“In summer we always have a good time near the river. We swim in the river. And we fight in the water and laugh and shout...”

“Speak on,” said the prince, “tell me more about your life...”

“When the weather is fine we dance, sing and play in the sand, and we cover each other with it, and then jump into the water again...”

“It’s wonderful,” said the prince. “I’m ready to give my crown for a day like that. Look, lad! Shall you give me your clothes and put on mine for some time, so that I can go to Offal Court and have a good time that you have there?” A few minutes later the little prince had Tom’s rags on and Tom put on the prince’s royal clothes. The two went and stood side by side before a great mirror...<sup>1</sup> Oh, what was that? They looked at themselves in the mirror for a long time and were surprised. Then they looked at each other, and then at the mirror again. At last the prince said:

“What do you think of this? We look like twins. We have the same colour of our hair, the same colour of our eyes. You have the same face as I. If we undress, nobody will say which of us is the Prince of Wales and which is Tom Canty, a beggar. Oh, look,<sup>2</sup> what is this?” The prince pointed to Tom’s hand. “What is this bruise? Is it because that soldier gave you a blow?”

“Yes, sir, but it is nothing...”

“Say no more! Stay here for a minute, I’ll be back very soon. It is a command.”

Quickly he took some little thing from the table and for a moment thought where to put it.

When he found the right place for it he opened the door of his cabinet and ran out. His face was hot and his

---

<sup>1</sup> **stood side by side before a great mirror** — встали рядом перед большим зеркалом

<sup>2</sup> **Oh, look** — Послушай

eyes were bright. As soon as he ran up to the great gates he shouted to the soldier:

“Open! Open the gates!”

The soldier, who took him for Tom,<sup>1</sup> did it very quickly and gave the prince such a hard blow that Edward fell onto the ground.

“Take that, you beggar,” shouted the soldier. “It was because of you that his highness got angry at me!”<sup>2</sup>

The crowd that stood near the gates laughed loudly. The prince got up from the ground, jumped up to the soldier and shouted angrily:

“I am the Prince of Wales, you shall be hanged<sup>3</sup> for what you have just done! You have lain your hand upon me!”<sup>4</sup>

The soldier saluted him and said mockingly, “I salute your royal highness!” Then angrily, “Be off,<sup>5</sup> you, mad beggar!”

Here the crowd around the poor little prince laughed again and pulled and pushed him away from the gates of the palace with loud cries:

“Way for his royal highness! Way for the Prince of Wales!”

---

<sup>1</sup> **who took him for Tom** — который принял его за Тома

<sup>2</sup> **It was because of you that his highness got angry at me!** — Это из-за тебя мне досталось от его высочества!

<sup>3</sup> **you shall be hanged** — ты будешь повешен

<sup>4</sup> **You have lain your hand upon me!** — Ты поднял руку на меня!

<sup>5</sup> **Be off** — Вон отсюда

## Activities

### ? *Checking Comprehension*

#### 1 **Make the right choice.**

- 1) Tom went
  - a) straight all the time
  - b) along the streets
  - c) along the river
- 2) Soon he saw
  - a) the Tower
  - b) the Thames
  - c) the Westminster
- 3) Tom put his face
  - a) against the bars
  - b) against the wall
  - c) against the fence
- 4) The soldier opened the gates and Tom
  - a) passed in
  - b) ran out
  - c) fell down
- 5) The prince took Tom
  - a) to the kitchen
  - b) to the bedroom
  - c) to the cabinet
- 6) In summer Tom had a good time
  - a) swimming in the river
  - b) running in the streets
  - c) playing in the yard

- 7) Tom put on
  - a) the prince's cap
  - b) the prince's crown
  - c) the prince's clothes

- 8) The prince said:
  - a) "We look like twins"
  - b) "We look like brothers."
  - c) "We look alike."

#### 2 **Say if the statement is true or false. Correct the false one.**

- 1) Tom went along the streets. He knew where he went.
- 2) The crowd on the square hoped to see the king.
- 3) When the prince saw Tom he invited him to the palace.
- 4) When Tom finished eating the prince asked him questions.
- 5) The prince said that his cousins and sisters were very good to him.
- 6) The prince promised to help Tom and his family.
- 7) The little prince did not like that Tom looked like him.
- 8) The crowd pushed Edward away from the gates of the palace.

#### 3 **Put the sentences in the right order.**

- 1) Tom wanted to have a better look at the prince.
- 2) The prince asked Tom such strange questions.
- 3) That day Tom went out hungry.
- 4) The soldier opened the gates, and Tom went in.
- 5) Tom found himself near the king's palace.

- 6) The prince took Tom into the palace.
- 7) Tom told the prince about his mother and his twin sisters.
- 8) In a few minutes the two boys were standing before a great mirror.
- 9) Tom told the prince what fun they had in summer.
- 10) The prince saw the bruise on Tom's hand.
- 11) The soldier mocked at the prince.
- 12) The prince ran out of his cabinet.

**4 Answer the following questions.**

- 1) How did Tom get to the centre of the city?
- 2) What were men, women and children doing on the square?
- 3) How was the little prince dressed?
- 4) What made the little prince see Tom?
- 5) What did the little prince ask Tom about?
- 6) How was Edward going to help Tom's sisters?
- 7) What did Tom tell Edward about his life?
- 8) What did the little prince and Tom have the same?
- 9) What did the prince notice on Tom's hand?
- 10) How did the prince look when he ran out of his cabinet?
- 11) What happened to the prince when he shouted at the soldier?
- 12) What did the crowd cry?

 **Working with Vocabulary and Grammar**

**1 Say what you understand by the following.**

- 1) One of the soldiers gave him a blow.

- 2) A terribly angry look came into the prince's eyes.
- 3) "I am ready to give my crown for a day like that".

**2 Fill in the missing prepositions.**

Tom went along the streets, his thoughts were full \_\_\_\_\_ his night's dreams. When he came \_\_\_\_\_ the gates \_\_\_\_\_ the palace, he saw a good-looking boy \_\_\_\_\_ the bars \_\_\_\_\_ the gates. One \_\_\_\_\_ the soldiers gave him a blow and pushed him \_\_\_\_\_ the gates. Tom fell \_\_\_\_\_. The young prince jumped \_\_\_\_\_ the gates. The soldiers let Tom \_\_\_\_\_. The prince took Tom \_\_\_\_\_ his cabinet and ordered one \_\_\_\_\_ the servants to bring food \_\_\_\_\_ Tom. \_\_\_\_\_ the first time \_\_\_\_\_ his life he ate such good food. The prince asked Tom many questions \_\_\_\_\_ his life, \_\_\_\_\_ his parents, and whether his parents were good \_\_\_\_\_ him. When he saw a bruise \_\_\_\_\_ Tom's hand, the prince ran out to punish the soldier who had done it. But the soldier took him \_\_\_\_\_ Tom and pushed him \_\_\_\_\_.

**3 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense form.**

- 1) Tom (go) along the streets.
- 2) He (take) one turning after another.
- 3) Soon he (see) a real prince.
- 4) He (come) up to the gates to have a better look at the prince.
- 5) The soldier (give) him a blow and Tom (fall) down.
- 6) One of the servants (bring) Tom something to eat.

- 7) Tom said that his grandmother often (beat) him.
- 8) The prince asked whether Tom's sister (let) her servants smile.
- 9) The prince said that Tom (speak) well.
- 10) Tom told the prince what a good time he and his comrades (have) in summer: they (swim) in the river and (fight) in the water.
- 11) The little prince and Tom (stand) side by side before a great mirror.
- 12) The prince (think) where to put that little thing.

**4 Match the adjectives with the suitable nouns. Use them in situations from the story.**

- |                 |              |
|-----------------|--------------|
| 1) poor         | a) blow      |
| 2) good-looking | b) lad       |
| 3) bright       | c) boy       |
| 4) young        | d) sister    |
| 5) angry        | e) prince    |
| 6) dirty        | f) look      |
| 7) thin         | g) apartment |
| 8) nice         | h) body      |
| 9) hard         | i) eyes      |
| 10) rich        | j) clothes   |

**5 Match the opposites.**

- |             |            |
|-------------|------------|
| 1) dress    | a) pull    |
| 2) take off | b) cry     |
| 3) push     | c) undress |
| 4) laugh    | d) put on  |

**6 Complete the sentences according to the models.**

Model 1: We fight to see who is *the strongest*.  
 Model 2: We run to see who is *the best runner*.

- 1) We play to see who is \_\_\_\_\_
- 2) We sing to see who is \_\_\_\_\_
- 3) We jump to see who is \_\_\_\_\_
- 4) We do the sums to see who is \_\_\_\_\_

 **Discussing the Text**

**1 Say why:**

- 1) men, women and children were standing around the square.
- 2) the prince jumped to the gates.
- 3) the prince ordered one of the servants to bring Tom some food.
- 4) the prince did not like Lady Mary.
- 5) the prince asked Tom where he learned.
- 6) the prince and Tom changed their clothes.
- 7) the prince ran out of his cabinet.
- 8) the soldier gave the prince a hard blow.
- 9) the crowd pushed the prince away from the gates of the palace.

**2 Prove that:**

- 1) Tom looked like the little prince.
- 2) Tom's speech was correct and beautiful.
- 3) the little prince's life was dull.

3 Add more details to the following:

- 1) Tom went along the streets.
- 2) Suddenly Tom saw a good-looking boy.
- 3) The prince took Tom to his cabinet.
- 4) "I have two sisters and cousins, too," said the prince.
- 5) "I am going to help your sisters," said the prince.
- 6) "My life has many good things when I am not hungry," said Tom.
- 7) The two boys looked at themselves in the mirror.
- 8) The prince opened the door and ran out.
- 9) The crowd laughed at the prince.

4 Act out the talk between:

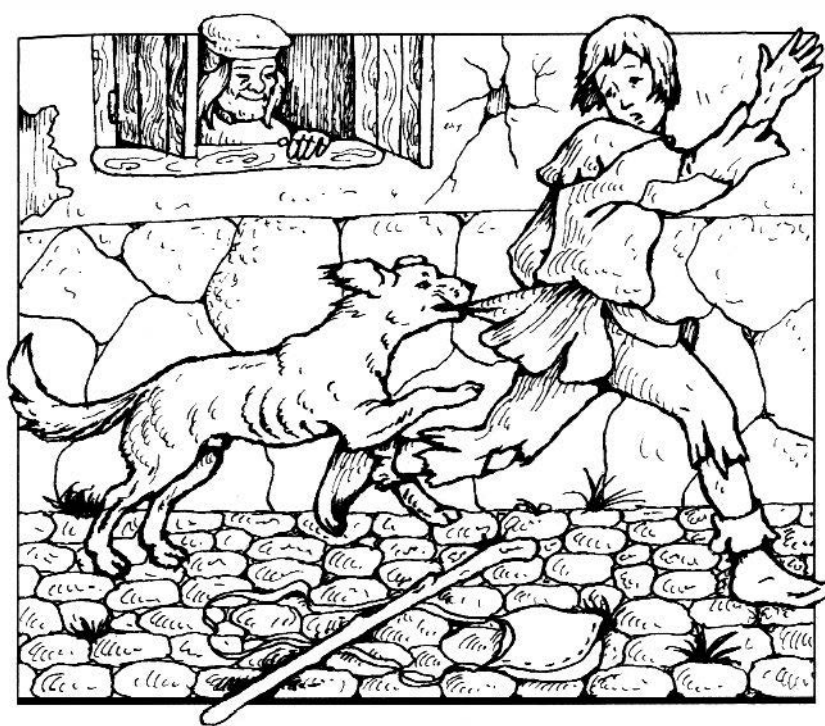
Tom and the little prince.

5 Imagine that you are:

- **Tom.** Say: a) how you found yourself in the royal palace; b) how you were surprised that you look like the little prince.
- **The little prince.** Say: a) how you met the beggar; b) how you changed your clothes; c) why you ran out of the palace.

6 What is your opinion?

- 1) Could you tell who the prince was and who the beggar was if somebody asked you to do that?
- 2) Did you look only at their faces and clothes? What else did you look at?



## Chapter IV THE PRINCE'S TROUBLES BEGIN

Several hours passed before the little prince was left in peace by the crowd. He was terribly tired and wanted to rest a little, but he did not know where he was. He looked about him and knew he was in the city of London — that was all he knew. But he could not tell what part of the city he was in. He walked on for some time, then rested for a few moments. And then again began to walk. Soon he came to a square where he saw a crowd of boys who were running, jumping, playing ball<sup>1</sup> and other

<sup>1</sup> a crowd of boys who were running, jumping, playing ball — толпу мальчуганов, которые бегали, прыгали, играли в мяч



games. When they saw the prince they stopped playing and gathered round him.

One of the boys asked him:

“Who are you and what do you want here?”

“I am Edward, Prince of Wales,” answered the prince, “and I want to ask you the way to the king’s palace?”

A loud laughter was the answer to his words.

“I am the prince. And you mustn’t laugh when I speak to you.”

These words brought a storm of laughter. The boy who was the first to speak to him shouted to his comrades:

“You, pigs, you, slaves of the king, his father, where are your manners? Down on your knees, all of you,<sup>1</sup> before his highness and his royal rags!”

All of them fell on their knees before Edward. For them it was like playing a game.<sup>2</sup> They laughed and bowed, laughed and bowed mockingly.

The prince pushed the nearest boy with his foot and said angrily:

“Take this for today, and tomorrow morning I shall hang all of you!”

Well, this was not a game! The laughter stopped at once. The boys were also angry now.

Some of the boys shouted, “Do you think you can push us with your foot? You are going to be sorry for that!<sup>3</sup> Where are our dogs?”

---

<sup>1</sup> **Down on your knees** [ni:z], **all of you** — Ну-ка, все на колени

<sup>2</sup> **For them it was like playing a game.** — Для них это было какой-то игрой.

<sup>3</sup> **You are going to be sorry for that!** — Ты пожалеешь об этом

In a minute the boys started beating him and the dogs’ teeth were cutting<sup>1</sup> his arms and legs!

When they finished beating him and went away, the prince felt terribly unhappy. He thought he could not walk, so tired he was. And he had many bruises on his body. He did not know the part of the city he was in. He thought:

“I must find Offal Court! When I find it, Tom’s parents will take me to the palace and everything will be well.”

The wind rose and it began raining. The prince was cold now. He walked on and on. Suddenly a big drunken man caught him by the collar and shouted:

“Why are you out so late at night? And today you haven’t brought me any money! If I do not break your legs and arms, then I am not John Canty, your father!”

“Are you John Canty? Is that so?<sup>2</sup> Are you really *his* father? How glad I am! Hurry up now, lead me to the palace and take your son Tom home.”

“My son? What do you mean? If you are not my son, I don’t know who is then?”

“Oh, please, please,” said the poor prince, “let us hurry! I’m so tired! When you take me to the king, my father, he will give you so much money that you will become quite\*rich. Please, believe me, I ask you! I’m really Edward, Prince of Wales!”

The man was surprised. He looked at the prince for a moment, then he said, “Mad, quite mad!” He seized him by his collar once more and said with a laugh: “But

---

<sup>1</sup> **were cutting** — кусали

<sup>2</sup> **Is that so?** — Неужели?

mad or no mad,<sup>1</sup> I am your father and you will remember me after a hard whipping.”<sup>2</sup>

He dragged Edward away and the poor prince could not do anything, he was quite helpless.

## Activities

### ? *Checking Comprehension*

#### 1 Make the right choice.

- 1) The crowd left the little prince
  - a) in the street
  - b) in peace
  - c) in Offal Court
- 2) Soon he came to the square where he saw
  - a) a crowd of boys
  - b) a crowd of people
  - c) a crowd of beggars
- 3) All of the boys fell
  - a) on the ground
  - b) on their knees
  - c) on the grass
- 4) When they finished beating him the prince
  - a) run away
  - b) got up and shouted at them
  - c) felt terribly unhappy

<sup>1</sup> **But mad or no mad** — Безумный или нет

<sup>2</sup> **after a hard whipping** — после хорошей порки

5) A big drunken man caught him

- a) by the hand
- b) by the collar
- c) by the sleeve

6) If you take me to the palace my father will give you

- a) a lot of money
- b) a lot of clothes
- c) a lot of food

#### 2 Say if the statement is true or false. Correct the false one.

- 1) The little prince knew where he was but he could not move.
- 2) The prince was glad to see a crowd of boys.
- 3) The boys were afraid to see the prince, and all of them fell on their knees.
- 4) The boys got angry when the prince pushed one of them with his foot.
- 5) The little prince wanted to find Offal Court.
- 6) John Canty took the prince for his son and was happy to see him.
- 7) The little prince promised to give him a lot of money, if John Canty takes him to the king.

#### 3 Put the sentences in the right order.

- 1) The boys fell on their knees before Edward.
- 2) The drunken man was surprised to hear that.
- 3) The prince had many bruises on his body.
- 4) The prince could not tell where he was.
- 5) The boys gathered round the prince.

- 6) The drunken man dragged the prince away.
- 7) The prince got angry and pushed one of the boys.
- 8) The boys beat him, and the dogs cut his arms and legs.

**4 Answer the following questions.**

- 1) How did the prince feel when the crowd left him in peace?
- 2) What were the boys doing when the prince saw them?
- 3) How did the boys meet the little prince?
- 4) What made the boys angry?
- 5) What did the prince ask John Canty to do for him?
- 6) What did John Canty do?

 **Working with Vocabulary and Grammar**

**1 Fill in the missing prepositions.**

When the crowd left him \_\_\_\_\_ peace, the little prince looked \_\_\_\_\_ him. He was \_\_\_\_\_ the city \_\_\_\_\_ London, but he did not know what part \_\_\_\_\_ the city he was \_\_\_\_\_. When the boys saw the little prince, they gathered \_\_\_\_\_ him. He asked them the way \_\_\_\_\_ the king's palace but they laughed \_\_\_\_\_ his words. The prince pushed one \_\_\_\_\_ the boys \_\_\_\_\_ his foot and they stopped laughing \_\_\_\_\_ once. They beat him and went \_\_\_\_\_. Suddenly a big drunken man caught the prince \_\_\_\_\_ the collar. He looked \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_ a moment,

and then said \_\_\_\_\_ a laugh that he was his father, and he dragged the prince \_\_\_\_\_.

**2 Make the sentences complete. Say how:**

- 1) The prince was \_\_\_\_\_ tired.
- 2) They laughed and bowed \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3) The prince spoke to the boy \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4) He walked \_\_\_\_\_ and thought \_\_\_\_\_.

**3 Match the two halves of the sentence.**

- 1) The prince felt unhappy because...
  - 2) The boys gathered round the prince because...
  - 3) The boys laughed at the prince because...
  - 4) The prince pushed the boy because...
  - 5) The boys beat the prince because...
  - 6) John Canty was surprised because...
- a) ...he looked different from them.
  - b) ...they thought he was joking.
  - c) ...he mocked at him.
  - d) ...he was tired, beaten, and lost.
  - e) ...the boy did not look like prince.
  - f) ...they got angry.

 **Discussing the Text**

**1 Say why:**

- 1) the little prince wanted to rest.
- 2) the boys fell on the knees before Edward.
- 3) Edward pushed one of the boys with his foot.

## Chapter V TOM IN THE KING'S PALACE

- 4) Edward had many bruises on his body.
- 5) Edward was glad to meet John Canty.
- 6) John Canty called Edward mad.

### 2 Prove that:

- 1) Edward was lost.
- 2) the boys did not believe Edward.
- 3) they treated him rudely.
- 4) John Canty was a bad father.

### 3 Add more details to the following:

- 1) The prince looked about him.
- 2) The boys gathered round the prince.
- 3) They finished beating the prince.
- 4) John Canty looked at Edward in surprise.

### 4 Act out the talk between:

- Edward and one of the boys.
- Edward and John Canty.

### 5 Imagine that you are:

- **Edward.** Say a) how you met the boys; b) how you met Tom's father.
- **John Canty.** Say how you found your son and what seemed strange about him.
- **One of the boys.** Say who you met in Offal Court.

### 6 What is your opinion:

- Do you think Edward was cruel to the boys?
- How about the boys? Were they cruel, too?

When the prince left Tom in the cabinet, Tom did not know what to do at first. Then he came up to the great mirror and began to turn himself this way and that way<sup>1</sup> before it. Next he took out the beautiful sword, and bowed. "Do I look like a real prince?" he thought. "I wonder if the boys from Offal Court will believe my story when I get home."

Half an hour passed and he began to worry. The prince was absent a long time.

"What shall I say if anybody comes and sees me in the prince's clothes with his sword?" he thought. "Will they hang me for this?"

He was afraid. He waited and waited. And he was more and more worried. He came up to the door and opened it. Six servants and two pages bowed low before him. He shut the door quickly.

"Oh, they mock at me," he thought. Now they will go and tell about me. They will hang me. Oh, why did I only come here? What did I do with my life? Now I shall die soon!"

He walked up and down the room<sup>2</sup> afraid and unhappy. Suddenly the door opened, and a page in silk clothes said:

"Lady Jane Grey."

---

<sup>1</sup> **this way and that way** — то так, то эдак

<sup>2</sup> **He walked up and down the room** — Он ходил взад и вперед по комнате

A very young girl in a rich dress came up to him. But she stopped suddenly and said in a low voice:

“What is the matter with you, my lord?”

Tom fell down on his knees and said:

“Mercy,<sup>1</sup> mercy! I am not a lord. I am only poor Tom Canty of Offal Court in the city. Please, let me see the prince. He will give me my rags back and let me leave the palace. Please, oh, please!”

The young girl was so surprised that she did not know what to say. She could only cry out:

“Oh, what is the matter with you, my lord? You are on your knees! And to *me!*”

She ran away in fear, and poor Tom was more frightened now. He thought: “There is no hope and no help now. Soon they will come and take me. Tomorrow they will hang me!”

.....

While Tom lay there on the floor more dead than alive with fear,<sup>2</sup> groups of lords and ladies gathered in the halls and corridors of the palace. They whispered to one another, “The prince is mad, the prince is mad.”

For some time they talked about one thing only — about the prince and his madness.

Then a lord appeared. He passed from one hall to another repeating the same words in a loud voice:

“In the name of the King!<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> **Mercy** [ˈmɜːsi] — Смилуйтесь (Пошадите)

<sup>2</sup> **more dead [ded] than alive with fear** — полумертвый от страха

<sup>3</sup> **In the name of the King!** — Именем короля!

“Upon pain of death let nobody listen or talk<sup>1</sup> about the false news of the prince’s madness. In the name of the King!”

Everybody stopped whispering at once. Soon they began to say to one another:

“The prince! See, the Prince of Wales is coming!”

Poor little Tom came slowly walking past the crowds of great lords who were bowing low to him. Two lords walked on each side of him holding his arms to help him walk. Behind him followed several court doctors and several servants.

## Activities

### ? *Checking Comprehension*

#### 1 **Make the right choice.**

- 1) In front of the mirror Tom began
  - a) to bow
  - b) to make faces
  - c) to turn himself this way and that way
- 2) Tom was more and more
  - a) worried
  - b) afraid
  - c) angry
- 3) The young girl was
  - a) surprised
  - b) frightened
  - c) unhappy

---

<sup>1</sup> **Upon pain of death let nobody listen or talk** — Под страхом смерти воспрещается слушать и говорить

- 4) The girl ran away
  - a) laughing
  - b) in fear
  - c) crying
- 5) Groups of lords and ladies
  - a) whispered to one another
  - b) looked at one another
  - c) listened to one another
- 6) A lord repeated the same words
  - a) in a low voice
  - b) in a loud voice
  - c) in a soft voice
- 7) Behind Tom followed
  - a) several soldiers
  - b) several court doctors
  - c) several lords

**2 Say if the statement is true or false. Correct the false one.**

- 1) When the prince left him in the cabinet, Tom was happy.
- 2) He wanted the boys from Offal Court believe his story.
- 3) Tom was happy that he looked like a real prince.
- 4) Tom asked Lady Grey to let him leave the palace.
- 5) Everybody in the palace talked about the prince.
- 6) Nobody believed that the prince was mad.

**3 Put the sentences in the right order.**

- 1) Everybody talked only about the prince's madness.
- 2) The young girl was very much surprised.

- 3) Tom walked followed by the court doctors and servants.
- 4) Tom was afraid and unhappy.
- 5) Tom did not know what to do.

**4 Answer the following questions.**

- 1) What did Tom do when the prince left him in the cabinet?
- 2) What did Tom tell Lady Jane Grey?
- 3) Did she believe him?
- 4) What were lords and ladies whispering about?

 **Working with Vocabulary and Grammar**

**1 Say what the italicized words mean.**

- 1) He took out the beautiful *sword* and *bowed*.
- 2) Two *pages* bowed low before him.
- 3) "They *mock at* me," he thought.
- 4) Poor Tom *was* more *frightened* now.
- 5) Everybody stopped *whispering* at once.

**2 Fill in the missing prepositions.**

Tom lay \_\_\_\_\_ the floor more dead than alive \_\_\_\_\_ fear. Groups \_\_\_\_\_ lords and ladies whispered \_\_\_\_\_ one another and talked \_\_\_\_\_ one thing only — \_\_\_\_\_ the prince and his madness. Then a lord appeared. He walked \_\_\_\_\_ one hall \_\_\_\_\_ another repeating the same words \_\_\_\_\_ a loud voice. \_\_\_\_\_ the name \_\_\_\_\_ the king nobody was allowed to talk \_\_\_\_\_ the false news \_\_\_\_\_ the prince's madness.

**3 Match the two halves of the sentence.**

- 1) He began to turn himself...
  - 2) Servants and pages bowed...
  - 3) He walked up and down the room...
  - 4) A very young girl in a rich dress...
  - 5) What is the matter...
  - 6) They were holding his arms...
- 
- a) ...low before him.
  - b) ...to help him walk.
  - c) ...this way and that way.
  - d) ...with you?
  - e) ...afraid and unhappy.
  - f) ...came up to him.

**4 Write down the opposites of the following words.**

- 1) dead —
- 2) life —
- 7) false —
- 4) loud voice —
- 5) slowly —
- 6) behind —
- 3) whisper —
- 8) same —



**Discussing the Text**

**1 Say who and why:**

- 1) was worried.
- 2) was surprised.
- 3) was frightened.

- 4) was afraid.
- 5) was unhappy.
- 6) whispered.

**2 Prove that:**

- 1) Tom did not want to be a prince.
- 2) everybody in the royal court took Tom for the prince.

**3 Act out the talk between:**

Tom and Lady Grey.

**4 Imagine that you are:**

- **Tom.** Say what you felt when you found yourself in the royal palace.
- **One of the lords.** Say what you thought when you heard the prince's words.

## Chapter VI TOM MEETS THE KING

Soon Tom found himself in a big apartment of the palace and the door closed behind him. Around him stood those who had come with him.

Before him there was a sofa. A large and very fat man lay on it. The expression of his wide face was stern.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> **The expression** [ɪks'preʃən]... **stern** — Выражение... суровое

His large head was very grey. One of his legs had a pillow under it. It was clear he was very ill. This invalid was Henry VIII, King of England.<sup>1</sup>

There was silence in the apartment. Then the man said:

“How are you now, my lord Edward, my prince? How are you, my dear son? Why are you making sad the king, your father, who loves you so much? I know you were not well.<sup>2</sup> Do you feel better now? Tell me you are better.”

When Tom heard the words ‘the king, your father’, he fell upon his knees and covered his face with his hands.

“Are you the *king*? Then I am lost!”<sup>3</sup>

“I thought the news was false. Now I see it was not,” said the man. “Come up to your poor father, child! You are not well, I can see it now.”

The servants helped Tom to get up to his feet and he came up to the king. The king took the frightened face of Tom between his hands and looked into his eyes. Then he said:

“Do you know your father, child? Do not break my old heart. You know me, don’t you?”

“Yes, I know you, your majesty. You are the king of England,” said Tom.

“True, true, that is well, my dear son,” said the king, “Be at peace.<sup>4</sup> Don’t be afraid of me. Don’t be afraid of

---

<sup>1</sup> **Henry VIII, King of England** — король Англии Генрих VIII (*Генрих VII (1491–1547)*), отец Эдуарда VI, прославившая своей жестокостью.)

<sup>2</sup> **you were not well** — тебе нездоровилось

<sup>3</sup> **I am lost!** — мне конец

<sup>4</sup> **Be at peace.** — Успокойся.

anybody. Everybody loves you. You are better now. You are not ill any longer, are you?”

“Oh, my lord, please believe me. I’m not a prince, I am really a pauper. I was born a pauper, and I am here only by mistake. But I am too young to die for that. Don’t let me die please, save me, sir!”

“Die? Why are you speaking of death, child? Be at peace, you shall not die!”

Again Tom fell down upon his knees before the king. “Oh, thank you, thank you, your majesty,” he said.

Then Tom stood up and turned to the lords his happy face. “Have you heard it? I shall not die, the king has said it!”

There was silence. Everybody bowed, but nobody said a word. Tom turned to the king and said, “May I go now?”

“Oh, yes,” said the king. “You may go if you wish. But where do you want to go?”

“I want to go home, your majesty,” Tom answered. “I want to go back to Offal Court. I was born there. My mother and my sisters live there. Please, sir, may I go there?”

Again there was silence for a moment. The king’s face was sad.

Then he said with some hope in his voice, “Perhaps he is mad upon this matter only. Let’s make trial,<sup>1</sup> then we shall see.”

---

<sup>1</sup> **Perhaps he is mad upon this matter only. Let’s make trial** — Может быть, он помешался только на одной этой мысли. Давайте испытаем его



The king asked Tom a question in Latin, and Tom answered him in the same language. The king was very much pleased and continued to examine Tom. He asked him a question in French. Tom stood silent for a moment, then said, "I'm sorry, sir, but I don't understand this language..."

The king fell back upon his sofa. He was sad and worried.

"It's nothing, child," he said. "Come here and put your poor head upon your father's heart. Be at peace. You will soon be well. I tell you! You will be well again!"

Then the king turned to his lords:

"Listen, all of you. My son is mad, that is true, but it will not be for long. He has studied too much, that is why<sup>1</sup> he became mad. So — no books and no teachers for him now. Let him rest! Let him go in for sports! Let him have a good time!"

He raised himself a little higher and continued, "Those who will talk about his illness are the enemies of England, they will die! Remember it! Mad or no mad, he is the Prince of Wales and soon he will be the King of England!"

Then the king turned to Tom and said:

"Kiss me, my dear son, and don't be afraid of anything. I am your loving father and I want you to be happy!"

The old man was tired. "Dear son," he said, "go with your uncle, Lord Hertford, to your apartment. Let him come back to me later, I want to talk to him. Now I want to rest a little."

<sup>1</sup> that is why — вот почему

? **Checking Comprehension**

1 **Make the right choice.**

- 1) Soon Tom found himself
  - a) in a long corridor
  - b) in a big apartment
  - c) in a beautiful hall
- 2) A large and very fat man
  - a) stood in the hall
  - b) lay on the sofa
  - c) sat in the armchair
- 3) The king
  - a) looked at Tom
  - b) at Tom's hair
  - c) into Tom's eyes
- 4) The king said that everybody
  - a) loved him
  - b) is afraid of him
  - c) is angry with him
- 5) The king asked Tom questions
  - a) in German and Latin
  - b) in English and Latin
  - c) in French and Latin
- 6) The king let Tom
  - a) no books and no teachers
  - b) no sports and no fun
  - c) no walk and no food

**2 Say if the statement is true or false. Correct the false one.**

- 1) Tom saw King of England sitting on the chair.
- 2) His hair was dark.
- 3) Tom fell upon his knees and cried
- 4) Tom said that he was not a prince.
- 5) Tom answered all the questions that the king asked him.
- 6) The king hoped that the prince was not ill.
- 7) The king let nobody talk about the prince's illness.
- 8) The king let the boy go home.

**3 Put the sentences in the right order.**

- 1) Tom came up to the king.
- 2) The king asked Tom questions in Latin and French.
- 3) The king wanted to rest.
- 4) Tom saw an old man on the sofa.
- 5) The king looked into the frightened eyes of the boy.
- 6) The king let no books and no teachers for Tom.
- 7) The king looked sad and worried.

**4 Answer the following questions.**

- 1) Where did Tom find himself?
- 2) What was King of England like?
- 3) The king was not sure that the prince was ill, was he?
- 4) What did Tom say to the king?
- 5) Where did he want to go?
- 6) What kind of trial did the king make?

- 7) What did the king say to the lords?
- 8) The king let no books for the prince, did he?
- 9) Who was Lord Hertford?

 **Working with Vocabulary and Grammar**

**1 Say what the italicized words mean.**

- 1) His large head was *grey*.
- 2) One of his legs had *a pillow* under it.
- 3) He fell upon his knees and *covered* his face with his hands.
- 4) You are not ill *any longer*, are you?
- 5) I am *too young* to die for that.
- 6) The king was very much *pleased* and continued *to examine* Tom.
- 7) Tom stood *silent* for a moment.
- 8) He *raised himself* a little higher and continued, "Those who will talk about his *illness* are the *enemies* of England."

**2 Fill in the missing prepositions.**

The door closed \_\_\_\_\_ Tom and he saw a sofa \_\_\_\_\_ him, and \_\_\_\_\_ it a fat man lay. He had a pillow \_\_\_\_\_ his leg. Tom fell \_\_\_\_\_ his knees and covered his face \_\_\_\_\_ his hands. The servants helped Tom to get \_\_\_\_\_ his feet and he came \_\_\_\_\_ the king. The king looked \_\_\_\_\_ his eyes. "Don't be afraid \_\_\_\_\_ anybody", he said. "I am here \_\_\_\_\_ mistake. I am too young to die \_\_\_\_\_ that." The king asked Tom questions \_\_\_\_\_ French

and Latin \_\_\_\_\_ some hope ... \_\_\_\_\_ his voice.  
Then he turned \_\_\_\_\_ the lords and said to let the  
boy go \_\_\_\_\_ sports.

**3 Report the sentences in indirect speech.**

- 1) "Do you feel better now?" asked the king.
- 2) "Why are you speaking of death, child?" he asked.
- 3) "You may go if you wish," he said.
- 4) "Where do you want to go?" he asked.
- 5) "I am sorry, sir, but I don't understand this language," he said.
- 6) "You will soon be well. You will be well again," he said.

**4 Make sentences with *too* according to the model.**

Model: Tom was frightened. He could not speak. —  
*Tom was too frightened to speak.*

- 1) Tom was young. He could not die for that.
- 2) He was weak. He could not stand.
- 3) He was sad. He did not smile.
- 4) He was worried. He could not be at peace.
- 5) He was tired. He could not talk any longer.

**5 Complete the sentences according to the model.**

Model: He has studied too much, that's why *he became mad.*

- 1) John Canty beat his son, that's why \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

- 2) Tom Canty was frightened, that's why \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3) The king was worried, that's why \_\_\_\_\_
- 4) The king was ill, that's why \_\_\_\_\_
- 5) The king hoped Tom was better, that's why \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 6) Tom wanted to go home, that's why \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 7) The king was tired, that's why \_\_\_\_\_

 **Discussing the Text**

**1 Say why:**

- 1) the king of England lay on the sofa.
- 2) Tom fell upon his knees and covered his face with his hands.
- 3) the king looked into Tom's eyes.
- 4) Tom asked the king to save him.
- 5) the king asked Tom questions in Latin and French.
- 6) the king let no teachers and no books for Tom.

**2 Prove that:**

- 1) the king was an invalid.
- 2) the king loved the prince.
- 3) the king believed that the boy in front of him was his son.

**3 Add more details to the following:**

- 1) There was a sofa in a big apartment.

- 2) Tom came up to the king.
- 3) Tom turned his happy face to the lords.
- 4) The king asked Tom a question in French.
- 5) The old man was tired.

**4 Act out the talk between:**

The king and Tom.

**5 Imagine that you are:**

- **Tom.** Say what you think about the king?.
- **The king.** Say what you think about Tom.
- **One of the lords.** Say what you think about Tom.



## Chapter VII TOM RECEIVES INSTRUCTIONS

Tom was brought to a very large hall and made to sit down<sup>1</sup> into a beautiful arm-chair. There were many lords standing around. He did not like to be sitting<sup>2</sup> before so many lords. He asked them to sit down, but they only bowed their heads and continued to stand. He was going to repeat his invitation to sit down but his 'uncle', Lord Hertford, whispered in his ear:

---

<sup>1</sup> Tom was brought to a very large hall and made to sit down —  
Тома привели в большой зал и усадили

<sup>2</sup> to be sitting — сидеть

“Please, my lord, do not ask them to sit down, they must not sit in your presence.”

Then Lord St. John entered the hall and said to Tom: “I have come with an order from the king. He wants only me and Lord Hertford to know about that order and nobody else, your highness.”

When all the lords left the hall Lord St. John said:

“This is his majesty’s order, your highness: you must hide your illness and never say that you are not the true prince. When you don’t know what to do and are afraid to make a mistake, you must ask Lord Hertford, your uncle, or me, your true servant. The king sends you his greetings and hopes that your illness will soon pass.”

Tom answered: “I shall do what the king wants me to do.”

“Please, your highness,” said Lord Hertford, “don’t read and don’t study today, because the king does not want you to look tired at the banquet this evening.”

Tom was surprised to hear about the banquet.

“Don’t be surprised,” said Lord St. John. “You have forgotten about the banquet, the city banquet which the king promised you two months ago. Do you remember now that you must be present at it?”

“I’m very sorry but I have really forgotten about the banquet,” said Tom who had no idea<sup>1</sup> about any banquets.

At this moment Lady Elizabeth and Lady Jane Grey arrived. Lord Hertford went quickly towards the door. As the two young girls passed him he whispered to them, “Please,

---

<sup>1</sup> **who had no idea** — который не имел ни малейшего понятия

ladies, do not show any surprise at the prince’s manners. If he forgets anything, do not pay any attention to that.<sup>1</sup>

At the same time Lord St. John was saying in Tom’s ear:

“Please, your highness, don’t forget the king’s order and try not to show your illness. Remember all you can remember. You must not show that you don’t remember anything. Do not let them see that you have changed much. You know how they love you, don’t you? And you know how sad your illness will make them! Do you want me and your uncle to stay?”

“Yes, please, do,” said Tom.

Many times during the conversation among the young people Tom did not know how to answer the ladies’ questions. But a word from one or the other girl helped him. Tom was a clever boy and he was learning the ways and manners of the court very quickly.

But still he made one mistake. Lord St. John told the ladies that the prince had to stop learning for some time because of his illness.<sup>2</sup>

“But I hope that you will be better soon and begin to study foreign languages again. I’m sure you will learn to speak many foreign languages as your father does.”

“My father!” cried Tom suddenly. “My father does not speak his own language correctly, only pigs can understand the meaning of his words...”

---

<sup>1</sup> **do not pay any attention to that** — не обращайтесь на это никакого внимания

<sup>2</sup> **the prince had to stop learning for some time because of his illness** — принцу придется на некоторое время прекратить занятия из-за своей болезни

He looked up and saw St. John's eyes. He stopped, then he continued slowly and sadly, "I am very sorry, this is my illness again. Sometimes I don't know myself what I am talking about."

"We know it, sir," said Lady Elizabeth and took her 'brother's' hand in her two hands. "Be at peace. We understand it all. Soon you will be well again. I hope and wish it with all my heart."

Once the little Lady Jane Grey said several words in Greek.<sup>1</sup> Lady Elizabeth saw surprise on Tom's face. She answered Lady Jane in Greek and changed the talk at once.

Tom invited the ladies to the city banquet that evening and was very pleased at the idea to have some friends with him. When the ladies left, Tom asked:

"May I go to some quiet corner and rest a little?"

"Please do, your highness," said Lord Hertford. "Of course you must rest because you will go to the city banquet in the evening."

He rang the bell, and a page came in. They led Tom to another apartment. Tom was going to take a cup of water from the table which stood in the middle of the room. But the page dropped upon one knee and gave it to Tom on a dish made of gold.

When Tom sat down on a sofa and wanted to take off his shoes, another page went down upon his knees and took Tom's shoes off. Tom thought, "Soon they will begin to breathe for me<sup>2</sup> too."

<sup>1</sup> in Greek [grɪ:k] — на греческом языке

<sup>2</sup> they will begin to breathe [brɪ:ð] for me — они возьмутся дышать за меня

He laid himself down to sleep, but he could not. His head was too full of thoughts and the room was too full of people. He could not tell them to go away, so they stayed.

## Activities

### ? *Checking Comprehension*

#### 1 Make the right choice.

- 1) Tom was surprised to see so many lords
  - a) sitting around
  - b) standing around
  - c) looking at him
- 2) Lord St. John entered the hall and said that
  - a) the king wanted to see the prince
  - b) he wants to tell something to the prince
  - c) he had something for the prince and Lord Hertford
- 3) The king promised the prince a banquet
  - a) in two months
  - b) in two weeks
  - c) in three months
- 4) Lord Hertford asked the ladies
  - a) not to pay attention to the prince's illness
  - b) not to talk to the prince
  - c) not to pay attention to the prince's manners
- 5) Tom learned the ways and manners of the court
  - a) very quickly

- b) with difficulty
  - c) with pleasure
- 6) Tom got surprised when the two ladies talked
- a) in Latin
  - b) in Greek
  - c) in Italian
- 7) Tom invited the ladies
- a) for a walk
  - b) to the banquet
  - c) to his cabinet
- 8) The page gave Tom a cup of water on a dish
- a) made of silver
  - b) made of gold
  - c) decorated with diamonds
- 9) Tom could not sleep well because
- a) the room was too full of people
  - b) the room was noisy
  - c) it was too cold
- 2 Say if the statement is true or false. Correct the false one.**
- 1) Tom was brought to a hall where many lords were sitting around.
  - 2) The king wanted Tom to ask lords for help.
  - 3) Tom was happy to hear about the banquet.
  - 4) Tom tried not to show that he did not remember some things.
  - 5) Tom liked to learn the ways and manners of the court.
  - 6) Tom tried to be very careful to what he was saying.

- 7) Tom was not surprised when Lady Grey spoke Greek.
- 8) Tom liked the two Ladies.
- 9) Tom liked that the page did everything for him.
- 10) Tom could not sleep in the room full of people.

**3 Answer the following questions.**

- 1) Where was Tom brought to?
- 2) What did Tom ask the lords to do?
- 3) Who did the king want to know about his order?
- 4) What did Lord Hertford ask Tom not to do that evening?
- 5) Tom had no idea about any banquets, did he?
- 6) What did Lord Hertford whisper to the two ladies when they arrived?
- 7) In what way did the two ladies help Tom to answer the questions?
- 8) Did Tom follow all the instructions? If not, which one?
- 9) What did Tom think about the two ladies? Did he want to make friends with them?
- 10) What did the page do for Tom?

 **Working with Vocabulary and Grammar**

**1 Say what the italicized words mean.**

- 1) They mustn't sit in your *presence*.
- 2) You must *hide* your illness and never say that you are not *the true* prince.

- 3) The king sends you his *greetings*.
- 4) He was learning *the ways and manners* of the court very quickly.
- 5) He *looked up* and saw St. John's eyes.
- 6) She *changed the talk* at once.
- 7) The page *dropped* upon one knee.

**2 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense form.**

Tom was (bring) to a large hall and (sit) down into an armchair. When all the lords (leave) the hall Lord St. John told Tom that the king (want) him (hide) his illness. He also said that the king (send) Tom his greetings. Tom (forget) about the banquet, but when the two ladies (arrive) he (make) no mistake. He (invite) them to the banquet. The two ladies (want) to help Tom, and when they (see) that he (can not) understand them, they (change) the talk. Tom (be) tired and (ring) the bell, and a page (come) in. He (give) Tom a cup of water on a dish (make) of gold. Then another page (take) off Tom's shoes and (lay) him on the sofa.

**3) Which nouns and verbs go together?**

- |             |                      |
|-------------|----------------------|
| 1) bow      | a) a cup of water    |
| 2) make     | b) the bell          |
| 3) send     | c) the talk          |
| 4) pay      | d) one's head        |
| 5) change   | e) a mistake         |
| 6) ring     | f) one's greetings   |
| 7) take     | g) attention         |
| 8) take off | h) clothes and shoes |

 **Discussing the Text**

**1 Say why:**

- 1) Tom wanted the lords to sit down.
- 2) the king did not want anybody to know about his order.
- 3) the king did not want Tom to read or study that evening.
- 4) the lord did not want Tom to show that he did not remember anything.
- 5) Lady Grey and Lady Elizabeth changed the talk.
- 6) Tom invited the ladies to the city banquet.
- 7) Tom could not sleep.

**2 Prove that:**

- 1) Tom learned the ways and manners of the court quickly.
- 2) Lady Grey and Lady Elizabeth wanted to help Tom.
- 3) Tom wanted to have friends in the court.
- 4) Tom had a sense of humour (чувство юмора).

**3 Add more details to the following:**

- 1) Sometimes Tom did not know what to say.
- 2) Tom was going to take a cup of water from the table.

**4 Act out the talk between:**

- Tom and his "uncle".
- Tom and one of the ladies.



5 **Imagine that you are:**

- **Tom.** Say what happened that day.
- **One of the ladies.** Say what you talked about with Tom.
- **Lord St. John.** Say what instructions you gave Tom.

## Chapter VIII TOM'S FIRST ROYAL DINNER

At one o'clock in the afternoon Tom was brought to a large apartment where a table was laid for one. There were many lords and servants there to watch the ceremony of the royal dinner. Tom was terribly hungry. He did not pay attention to all those people. He did not know that he had three hundred and eighty-four servants more. They were not all in that room, of course. And those who were present knew that the prince was ill, he was mad, but they also knew they must not pay attention to any childish tricks<sup>1</sup> of the prince.

The prince's 'childish tricks' began at once. First of all he began to eat with his fingers. He did not even see that here were forks and knives on the table. Nobody smiled, everybody was sorry for him. Then another 'trick' took place: Tom looked at his napkin with great interest and surprise.

Then he said:

"Please take it away, it is very clean. I am afraid I shall make it dirty with my fingers."

The lord whose duty was to tie the napkin around the prince's neck took it away without any protest.

When Tom had finished his dessert, he put quite a lot of nuts into his pockets. But everybody pretended that they did not see it.

Some minutes later Tom was at a loss.<sup>1</sup> He was afraid to make a mistake. It was his nose that worried him: it began to itch. It itched stronger and stronger, and Tom did not know what to do. He was afraid to scratch it. He was sure that he must not do it himself. He looked at the lords, the lords looked at him. Tears came into his eyes, and nobody knew what the matter was. At last Tom said:

"I beg your pardon,<sup>2</sup> my lords, my nose itches terribly. What instructions does the etiquette give us? Please hurry with your answer because I can't stand it any longer."<sup>3</sup>

Alas! There was no Royal Nose Scratcher<sup>4</sup> in the English history, so nobody could help him. At last Tom decided to break the etiquette and scratched his nose himself.

The last mad trick took place after his dinner. A lord came up to Tom and gave him a golden cup with rose-water in it, to cleanse his mouth and fingers with.<sup>5</sup> Tom looked at the cup a moment or two, then raised it to his mouth and drank some rose-water. He gave it back to the waiting lord and said:

"No, my lord, I am sorry to say, I don't like it, I don't like it at all!"

<sup>1</sup> **at a loss** — в растерянности

<sup>2</sup> **I beg your pardon** — Прошу прощения

<sup>3</sup> **I can't stand it any longer** — я больше не в силах терпеть

<sup>4</sup> **There was no Royal Nose Scratcher** — Должности «Королевский чесальщик носа» не существовало

<sup>5</sup> **a golden cup with rose-water in it, to cleanse [klenz] his mouth and fingers with** — золотую чашу с ароматной розовой водой для полоскания рта и омовения пальцев

<sup>1</sup> **childish tricks** — детские причуды (выходки)

This new 'mad trick' of the poor prince made all the hearts more sorry for him.

When his dinner was over Tom got up and left the table. He asked the lords to take him to his cabinet. There he was left alone at last. Tom remembered about the nuts in his pockets. He began cracking them which made him almost happy for the first time since he became a prince.

When he finished with the nuts he came up to a big bookcase full of books. Among them he found one about the etiquette of the English court. That was a pleasant surprise. He lay down upon a big sofa which stood opposite the bookcase and began to study the etiquette of the English court.

Let us leave him there for some time.

## Activities

### ? *Checking Comprehension*

#### 1 Say what:

- 1) the servants mustn't pay attention to.
- 2) Tom used when he ate.
- 3) Tom looked at with great interest and surprise.
- 4) Tom put into his pockets.
- 5) Tom was afraid to make.
- 6) worried Tom.
- 7) came into Tom's eyes.
- 8) was in the golden cup.
- 9) Tom remembered about in his cabinet.
- 10) made Tom happy.
- 11) Tom found in the bookcase.
- 12) Tom began to study.

#### 2 Put the sentences in the right order.

- 1) Tom decided to break the etiquette.
- 2) He was terribly hungry and he began to eat with his fingers.
- 3) Tom did not pay attention to all those people.
- 4) Tom was left alone in his cabinet.
- 5) His nose itched stronger and stronger.
- 6) Tom was afraid to make the napkin dirty with his fingers.
- 7) He put a lot of nuts into his pockets.
- 8) In a large apartment a table was laid for one.
- 9) Many lords and servants came to watch a ceremony of the royal dinner.
- 10) Tom began cracking nuts.
- 11) He studied the etiquette of the English court.

#### 3 Say if the statement is true or false. Correct the false one.

- 1) There were hundreds of lords and servants in the hall to watch the ceremony of the royal dinner.
- 2) Tom began to eat with a fork and a knife.
- 3) Tom made the napkin dirty with his fingers.
- 4) Tom liked nuts.
- 5) Tom's eyes were full of tears because his nose itched.
- 6) A scratchier scratched Tom's nose.
- 7) Tom did not know what to do with rose-water.
- 8) After dinner Tom went to his cabinet.
- 9) Tom enjoyed studying the etiquette of the English court.

4 Answer the following questions.

- 1) How many servants did Tom have?
- 2) How many people was the table laid for?
- 3) Tom did not pay attention to all these people, did he?
- 4) How did Tom eat?
- 5) Did he know how to use a napkin? Why do you think so?
- 6) What did Tom do when he finished his dessert?
- 7) What happened to Tom's nose?
- 8) How did he find the way out (вышел из этого положения)?
- 9) What was rose-water for?
- 10) What did Tom do in his cabinet?

 Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 Say what the italicized words mean.

- 1) A table *was laid* for one.
- 2) They must not *pay attention* to his *childish tricks*.
- 3) The lord whose duty was *to tie napkin* around the prince's neck *took it away* without any protest.
- 4) He put *quite a lot of* nuts into his pockets.
- 5) Everybody *pretended* that they did not see it.
- 6) Tom's nose began *to itch*.
- 7) He was afraid *to scratch* his nose.
- 8) Tom decided *to break the etiquette*.
- 9) Tom began *cracking* the nuts that he brought in his pockets.

2 Fill in the missing prepositions.

There were many lords and servants \_\_\_\_\_ the hall, but Tom did not pay attention \_\_\_\_\_ them. He began to eat \_\_\_\_\_ his fingers. Then he saw a very clean napkin and looked \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ interest and surprise. He asked to take it \_\_\_\_\_ not to make it dirty \_\_\_\_\_ his fingers. The lord wanted to tie it \_\_\_\_\_ Tom's neck, but he took it \_\_\_\_\_ any protest. Suddenly his nose began to itch and tears came \_\_\_\_\_ Tom's eyes. \_\_\_\_\_ dinner a lord came \_\_\_\_\_ Tom and gave him a golden cup \_\_\_\_\_ rose-water. Tom did not know what to do \_\_\_\_\_ it. He raised it \_\_\_\_\_ his mouth, drank a little, and gave it \_\_\_\_\_ the lord. His dinner was \_\_\_\_\_, Tom got \_\_\_\_\_ and a lord took him \_\_\_\_\_ his cabinet. There Tom cracked his nuts and was almost happy \_\_\_\_\_ the first time \_\_\_\_\_ he became a prince. There was a bookcase full \_\_\_\_\_ books \_\_\_\_\_ his cabinet, and \_\_\_\_\_ it there was a sofa \_\_\_\_\_ which he lay \_\_\_\_\_.

3 Say which nouns go with which verbs. Use them to describe the events from the story.

- |               |                   |
|---------------|-------------------|
| 1) to lay     | a) somebody alone |
| 2) to eat     | b) a mistake      |
| 3) to watch   | c) attention      |
| 4) to make    | d) instructions   |
| 5) to beg     | e) nuts           |
| 6) to hurry   | f) on a sofa      |
| 7) to scratch | g) a cup          |
| 8) to raise   | h) one's pardon   |

- |              |                       |
|--------------|-----------------------|
| 9) to leave  | i) with one's answer  |
| 10) to crack | j) one's nose         |
| 11) to lie   | k) with one's fingers |
| 12) to pay   | l) a table            |
| 13) to give  | m) a ceremony         |

**4 Put the words in the right order.**

- 1) those, present, who, all, were, knew, pay, must, to, attention, they, not, tricks, prince, of, the, childish, the.
- 2) table, the, forks, on, there, knives, and, were, he, not, did, even, see, that.
- 3) Into, nuts, put, quite, a, lot, Tom, pockets, of, his.
- 4) came, a, up, Tom, gave, rose-water, in, lord, to, and, him, cup, with, golden, a, it.
- 5) bookcase, opposite, lay, he, down, stood, upon, sofa, a, big, which, the.



**Discussing the Text**

**1 Say why:**

- 1) the table was laid for one.
- 2) the lords mustn't pay attention to any childish tricks of the prince.
- 3) Tom ate with his fingers.
- 4) the lord took away the napkin.
- 5) Tom was at a loss.
- 6) Tom decided to break the etiquette.
- 7) Tom did not like the rose-water that a lord gave him.
- 8) Tom was happy in his cabinet.

**2 Prove that:**

- 1) Tom did not know the etiquette of the English court.
- 2) Tom wanted to know the etiquette of the English court.
- 3) Tom liked to learn.

**3 Act out the talk between:**

- Tom and a waiting lord at dinner.
- Tom and a waiting lord after dinner.

**4 Imagine that you are:**

- **Tom.** Say a) what your first royal dinner was like; b) What you did in the cabinet after dinner.
- **A waiting lord.** Say about your feelings during that dinner.

**5 Speak about yourself honestly:**

- 1) Do you know how to lay the table? Who lays the table in your family? Why?
- 2) Do you know the table manners? Do you like them? Why? Why not?
- 3) Do you sometimes eat with your fingers? If yes, when?
- 4) Do you sometimes scratch your nose? When? Is it a good manner to scratch your nose in the presence of other people? Give your reasons.
- 5) Do you like to give instructions? Why? Why not?
- 6) Do you like to take instructions? Why? Why not?
- 7) Do you make mistakes in your written work? Why? Why not?

- 8) Do you like to lie on the sofa when you watch TV, or do you usually watch TV sitting? Why?

## Chapter IX THE QUESTION OF THE SEAL

About five o'clock Henry VIII woke up. One of the servants told him that the Lord Chancellor<sup>1</sup> was waiting for him to wake up. The king told the servant to bring the Lord in at once.

When the Lord Chancellor entered, the king asked him if everything was ready for the execution of the Duke of Norfolk.<sup>2</sup>

"I have given order to have everything ready for the execution," said the Lord Chancellor. "But first we must seal the sentence for his execution."

"Hurry, hurry, you, man!" said the king. "I want you to bring me my enemy's head before the sun sets tomorrow".<sup>3</sup>

"Your majesty," said the Lord Chancellor, "will you order to give me the Great Seal so that I can use it? You took it from me several days ago and gave it to his highness the Prince of Wales to keep it."

<sup>1</sup> the Lord Chancellor [ˈtʃɑːnsələ] — лорд-канцлер (*Лорд-канцлер — высшее должностное лицо, является начальником канцелярии короля, хранителем печати, председателем палаты лордов.*)

<sup>2</sup> the Duke of Norfolk — герцог Норфолькский

<sup>3</sup> I want you to bring me my enemy's head before the sun sets tomorrow — Я хочу, чтобы ты принес мне голову моего врага завтра до захода солнца

"True, true, I remember it now," said the king. "Go to the Prince of Wales and take it from him. Go, time flies!"

The Lord Chancellor ran to the prince, but very soon he came back to the king without the Seal.

"I am sorry to say, my lord the king, but the prince's illness is not yet over and he cannot remember anything about the Seal."

With a great sadness in his voice the king said:

"Leave poor child in peace, do not trouble him any more and do not ask him any questions about the Seal."

He closed his eyes and was silent. After some time he opened his eyes again and saw the Lord Chancellor still on his knees.

"What? You are still here?" he shouted. "If you don't hurry with my enemy's execution tomorrow, you will die yourself!"

"Mercy, mercy, your majesty! I am waiting for the Great Seal!"

"Do you not understand that we can use our small Seal if we cannot find the Great Seal? Go and bring me the small Seal. I shall use it so that my enemy the Duke of Norfolk's execution can take place tomorrow morning. And do not come to me without his head!"

## Activities

### ? Checking Comprehension

#### 1 Say what:

- 1) the king told the servant.
- 2) the king asked the Lord Chancellor about.

- 3) the Lord Chancellor had to seal.
- 4) the king wanted the Lord Chancellor to bring him before the sunset.
- 5) the prince did not remember about.
- 6) the king could use instead of the Great Seal.

**2 Put the sentences in the right order.**

- 1) The king wanted the Lord Chancellor to bring him the small Seal.
- 2) The king ordered to hurry with the execution.
- 3) The king told the Lord Chancellor to take the Great Seal from the prince.
- 4) When the king woke up he ordered to bring the Lord Chancellor to him.
- 5) But he needed the Great Seal because he had to seal the sentence for the execution.
- 6) The Lord Chancellor told the king that everything was ready for the execution.
- 7) The king said not to trouble the prince about the Seal.
- 8) The Lord Chancellor could not take the Seal from the prince.

**3 Say if the statement is true or false. Correct the false one.**

- 1) The Lord Chancellor woke up the king.
- 2) The king wanted to have the Duke's head the next morning.
- 3) The Lord Chancellor wanted to have the Great Seal.
- 4) The prince did not want to give him the Great Seal.

- 5) The king was very sad about the Great Seal.
- 6) The king could not use the small Seal if the Great Seal was lost.

**4 Answer the following questions.**

- 1) Who did the king want to see when he woke up?
- 2) What was going to happen the next day?
- 3) What did the Lord Chancellor need the Seal for?
- 4) Where was the Great Seal?
- 5) Was the king angry with the Lord Chancellor?

 **Working with Vocabulary and Grammar**

**1 Say what the italicized words mean.**

- 1) The king told the servant *to bring* the Lord *in*.
- 2) We must *seal the sentence* for *the execution* of *the Duke*.
- 1) The Lord Chancellor needed the Great *Seal*.
- 2) Go quickly. Time *flies*.
- 3) Don't *trouble* the prince *any more*.

**2 Say what is special about these words. Consult your dictionary if you need help. Make up sentences with these words.**

sentence, seal, set, use, fly, leave, trouble, question, open, hurry, find, place, head, need, help.

**3 Fill in the missing prepositions.**

The Lord Chancellor was waiting \_\_\_\_\_ the king to wake \_\_\_\_\_. The Lord said that everything was

ready \_\_\_\_\_ the execution \_\_\_\_\_ the Duke \_\_\_\_\_ Norfolk. The Lord wanted to take the Seal \_\_\_\_\_ the prince. Very soon he came \_\_\_\_\_ the Seal. When the king knew that the prince's illness was not yet \_\_\_\_\_ he spoke \_\_\_\_\_ a great sadness \_\_\_\_\_ his voice.

### *Discussing the Text*

#### **1 Say why:**

- 1) the Lord Chancellor wanted the Great Seal.
- 2) he came back without the Great Seal.
- 3) there was sadness in the king's voice when he spoke about the prince.

#### **2 Prove that:**

- 1) Henry VIII was a cruel king.
- 2) the life of the Lord Chancellor was in danger too.

#### **3 Act out the talk between:**

- The Lord Chancellor and the king.
- The Lord Chancellor and the prince.

## **Chapter X**

### **THE PRINCE IN OFFAL COURT**

We left poor Prince Edward at the moment when John Canty started dragging him to Offal Court. The

prince tried to get free. Then John Canty gave him a blow with his heavy wooden stick. An old man ran up to them. It was the old priest, Father Andrew, who taught Tom to read and write and who loved Tom very much. He wanted to stop the man's arm, but John Canty was too drunk to understand what he was doing. His heavy stick fell on the old man's head and the priest fell down on the ground. John Canty hurried away dragging the prince with him, Edward was helpless.

Soon he found himself in John Canty's dirty room. There were two girls and two women in it.

John Canty said to the older woman, "Just listen to what the lad says and then help me to give him a good whipping. Well, lad, repeat your foolish words again. Name your name. Who are you?"

The little prince's face was red with anger. He raised his head and said:

"I tell you now what I told you before. I am Edward, Prince of Wales."

The old woman and John Canty began to laugh at his words. But Tom Canty's mother ran up to the prince, fell on her knees and put her hand upon his shoulders. Then she said:

"Oh, my poor boy. Your foolish reading has made you mad. You are breaking your mother's heart."

The prince looked into her face and answered:

"Your son is well and he is not mad, my poor woman. Let us go together to the palace where he is, and the king, my father, will let him go home with you."

The woman began to cry, covering her face with her hands. One of the girls said to her father:

“Let him go to bed, Father, tomorrow he will be himself again,<sup>1</sup> he will beg again and will not come home without money.”

“Show me what you have brought today,” John Canty said to Edward.

The prince answered:

“I tell you again I am the king’s son.”

Tom’s father got so angry at these words that he stopped laughing at once. Heavy blows began to fall upon Edward’s shoulders and face. The grandmother went out of her corner to help her son to beat the boy; and when they finished with him, they gave the girls and their mother a beating too, because they had been good to Edward.<sup>2</sup>

“Now,” said Canty, “to bed, all of you. I am tired.”

When everybody was asleep, the young girls came to where the prince lay and covered him from the cold with rags, and their mother came to him also. She brought him a piece of bread, but he lost his appetite and could not eat. At last he fell asleep.

Tom’s mother lay thinking of what had happened.<sup>3</sup> There was something strange in the boy’s manners. She could not tell what it was, but she felt that his manners and speech were different from the manners and speech of her son Tom. Was it possible that the boy was really not her son? She decided to give him a trial. She thought:

---

<sup>1</sup> tomorrow he will be himself again — завтра он придет в себя

<sup>2</sup> because they had been good to Edward — за то, что они были добры к Эдуарду

<sup>3</sup> Tom’s mother lay thinking of what had happened — Мать Тома лежала, думая о том, что произошло

“This trial will show me whether he is my son or not.”

When Tom was suddenly awakened or was frightened by something, he always covered his eyes with the back of his hand.<sup>1</sup>

She lit her candle and came up softly to the sleeping boy. Then suddenly she brought the candle close to his face and struck the floor near his ear with her hand. The boy’s eyes opened at once and he looked around in surprise, but he did not cover his eyes.

The poor woman did not know what to do. She went up to the boy several times and repeated the trial. The boy woke up and looked around in fear each time, but he did not cover his eyes with his hand. At last she went to bed and fell asleep in tears.

The prince woke up from a heavy sleep because somebody was knocking at the door.

“Who is there? What do you want?” said John Canty.

A voice answered:

“Do you know who it was that you laid down with your stick?”<sup>2</sup>

“No,” John Canty said, “I do not know and I do not care!”<sup>3</sup>

“Oh, you do not care, do you?” the voice said. “If you want to save your neck,<sup>4</sup> John Canty, you must hurry

---

<sup>1</sup> with the back of his hand — ладонью наружу

<sup>2</sup> who it was that you laid down with your stick — кого ты уложил своей дубинкой

<sup>3</sup> I do not care — мне все равно

<sup>4</sup> If you want to save your neck — эд. Если хочешь сохранить свою жизнь



and run away. The man is dying at this moment. This is our priest, Father Andrew!”

“Father Andrew!” John Canty cried out. “I am lost!”

He woke his family up and commanded:

“Get up at once and run away! If you stay where you are, you are all lost!”

Very quickly the family gathered up their few things and five minutes later they were running along the dark street to save their lives. John Canty held the prince by the hand and hurried him away from the house.

“Forget our name, you, mad fool! I must take a new name now.”

Then he turned to the family:

“If we lose one another, let us meet at London Bridge. Then we shall walk on together.”

As they were walking along the dark streets the prince thought:

“I must run away from him, this is my chance, I must use it.”

Soon they were near London Bridge. It was illuminated. They found themselves among singing, dancing and shouting people. Everybody wanted to watch the illumination in honour of the Prince of Wales.<sup>1</sup>

Edward took his chance,<sup>2</sup> pulled his hand out of John Canty’s and ran. He took the first turning on the left, then another turning on the right. He ran and ran and ran until he found himself near his father’s palace.

---

<sup>1</sup> **in honour** [ɒnə] of the Prince of Wales — в честь принца Уэльского

<sup>2</sup> **Edward took his chance** — Эдуард решил рискнуть

“Now I can tell the guards who I am and everything will be well. And I shall hang this little pauper who has taken my place in the palace.”

He told the guard to open the gates to him, because he was the Prince of Wales. Nobody believed him, of course, and the crowd near the palace laughed at him. When he began to cry, the people liked it very much. They mocked at him, pulled and pushed him. But he repeated again and again:

“I am the Prince of Wales.”

Suddenly he heard a voice:

“It is all the same to me whether you are the prince or not. I like you because you are a brave lad. I shall be your friend. You must know that Miles Hendon can be a real friend. I shall not allow anybody to mock at you and I shall always help you when you are in trouble.”<sup>1</sup>

The speaker was a tall, strong man. His clothes were made of rich material, but looked very old. The sword at his side<sup>2</sup> was also very old.

The crowd answered his words with mocking<sup>3</sup> and laughter. A man cried, “Let us drag him and the lad to the river!”

Another man pulled the prince by the arm. But the tall young man pulled out his sword, and the man went down to the ground at once. The next moment several voices shouted: “Kill the dog, kill him, kill him!”

---

<sup>1</sup> **when you are in trouble** — когда ты попадешь в беду

<sup>2</sup> **The sword at his side** — Шпага, болтавшаяся у него на боку

<sup>3</sup> **with mocking** — насмешками

They were going to attack the brave young man who stood with his back to the wall, giving blows to the right and to the left.

Suddenly a voice shouted:

“Way for the king’s messenger!”

The crowd turned away from Miles Hendon. He caught the prince in his arms and soon they were far away from danger.

.....

At that time Tom Canty was sailing down the Thames on the royal barge. The Princess Elizabeth and Lady Jane Grey were sailing with him.

Suddenly the king’s messenger appeared on the barge. Everybody stopped talking and looked at him in surprise. He came up to Tom and said loudly:

“The King is dead!”

All the people who were there, fell on their knees before Tom and shouted:

“Long live the King! Long live Edward, King of England!”

Suddenly an idea came to Tom’s head. He said in a low tone at Hertford ear:

“Tell me the truths if I give a command,— a command which only a king can give,— will it be obeyed?<sup>1</sup> Can any man rise and say ‘no’?”

“Your majesty, nobody can say ‘no’ to your command! You are the King — your word is law.”

“Then,” said Tom, “let the king’s law be law of mercy, from this day. Let the king’s law never more be law of

blood! Get up from your knees and hurry to the Tower<sup>1</sup> to tell the Duke of Norfolk that he will not die!”

Tom’s words were heard by the people who stood near by. When Hertford was leaving there was another shout:

“The kingdom of blood is over! Long live Edward, King of England!”

## Activities

### ? *Checking Comprehension*

#### 1 **Make the right choice.**

- 1) John Canty was dragging the prince
  - a) to Offal Court
  - b) to the palace
  - c) to the river
- 2) The old woman and John Canty began
  - a) to laugh at the prince’s words
  - b) to shout at the prince
  - c) to push the prince
- 3) John Canty and his mother beat the girls and their mother because
  - a) they mocked at them
  - b) they didn’t listen to them
  - c) they had been good to Tom

<sup>1</sup> **Tower**[’taʊə] — Тауэр (ранее — тюрьма, где содержались коронованные и другие знатные преступники, ныне — арсенал и музей средневекового оружия и орудий пытки)

<sup>1</sup> **will it be obeyed** — будет ли он (приказ) исполнен

- 4) Tom's mother noticed something strange
  - a) in the boy's manners
  - b) in the boy's face
  - c) in the boy's clothes
- 5) The prince woke up from his sleep because
  - a) somebody was shouting
  - b) somebody was knocking at the door
  - c) somebody was calling him
- 6) The family agreed to meet
  - a) under the bridge
  - b) at London Bridge
  - c) at the end of the street
- 7) Soon Miles Hendon and the prince were
  - a) far away from the bridge
  - b) far from town
  - c) far away from danger

**2 Say whether the statement is true false. Correct the false one.**

- 1) John Canty gave blows to everybody who tried to help the prince.
- 2) The prince was too helpless to run away from John Canty.
- 3) Tom's mother felt that the boy was not her son Tom.
- 4) John Canty killed Father Andrew.
- 5) When John Canty did not look at him the prince took the chance and ran away from him.
- 6) He told the guards to open the gates because he was the king.

- 7) Miles Hendon saved the prince from the angry crowd.
- 8) The king's messenger was standing on the bank of the river and shouting that the king was dead.
- 9) Tom Canty made the Duke of Norfolk free.

**3 Answer the following questions.**

- 1) Who did John Canty give a blow when he was dragging the prince to Offal Court?
- 2) Tom's mother was sorry for the boy, wasn't she?
- 3) How did the girls treat the boy?
- 4) How did the old woman treat the boy?
- 5) How did the prince manage to run away from John Canty?
- 6) What trial did Tom's mother give the boy?
- 7) What made the Canty family run away from Offal Court?
- 8) How did the prince find himself near the king's palace?
- 9) The guard did not open the gates to the prince, didn't he?
- 10) Who saved the prince from the mocking crowd? What was he like?
- 11) What news did the king's messenger bring?
- 12) What was the first law of the new king?

 **Working with Vocabulary and Grammar**

**1 Say what the italicized words mean.**

- 1) John Canty *was dragging* the prince to Offal Court.
- 2) He gave the little prince a good *whipping*.

- 3) *Heavy blows* began to fall upon his face and *shoulders*.
- 4) There was something *strange* in the boy's manners.
- 5) It is *allthesame* to me whether you are the prince or not.
- 6) I like you because you are *a brave lad*.
- 7) He pulled out his *sword* and the man *went down to the ground at once*.
- 8) Tom Canty *was sailing* down the Thames on the royal *barge*.
- 9) A king's *messenger appeared* on the barge.
- 10) Let the King's law be *law of mercy* and never be the *law of blood*.

**2 Complete the sentences with the words from the box.**

frightened
strange
worried
helpless
drunk
dirty
good

- 1) John Canty was too \_\_\_\_\_ to understand what he was doing.
- 2) Edward was too \_\_\_\_\_ to run away from John Canty.
- 3) Tom's mother was too \_\_\_\_\_ to sleep well.
- 4) John Canty was too \_\_\_\_\_ to stay in Offal Court.

- 5) His clothes were too \_\_\_\_\_ to take him for the prince.
- 6) His manners were too \_\_\_\_\_ to believe that he was her son.
- 7) His words were too \_\_\_\_\_ not to believe them.

**3 Fill in the missing forms of the verbs in the box. Say in what situations they are used in the story.**

feel		
	fell	
	lit	
strike		
lay		
lie		
	held	
		let
rise		
		taught

 **Discussing the Text**

**1 Say why:**

- 1) John Canty wanted his son to return home.
- 2) John Canty got angry at Edward's words.
- 3) Tom's mother gave a trial to the boy.

- 4) John Canty and his family ran away from Offal Court.
- 5) London Bridge was illuminated.
- 6) the guards did not believe Edward.
- 7) the crowd was mocking at him.
- 8) Miles Hendon pulled out his sword.
- 9) Hertford hurried to the Tower.

**2 Prove that:**

- 1) John Canty was too drunk.
- 2) John Canty and his mother were too cruel.
- 3) Edward was different from Tom in his manners and speech.
- 4) John Canty got frightened when somebody woke him up.
- 5) Miles Hendon was strong and brave.
- 6) Tom was kind.

**3 Add more details to the following:**

- 1) Father Andrew wanted to stop John Canty's hand.
- 2) Tom's Mother came up to the prince when John Canty was laughing at him.
- 3) She lit a candle and came up to the sleeping boy.
- 4) Edward pulled his hand out of John Canty's.
- 5) The crowd laughed at Edward.
- 6) His clothes were made of rich material.
- 7) Suddenly an idea came to Tom's head.

**4 Imagine that you are:**

- **Edward.** Say a) how John Canty dragged you; b) what room he dragged you in; c) how he

and other members of his family treated you; d) what happened at night; how you met Miles Hendon.

- **Tom.** Say what happened when you were sailing on the royal barge.
- **Miles Hendon.** Say how you met Edward.
- **Tom's mother.** Say what you felt when you saw the boy in the room.
- **John Canty.** Say why you were so angry and beat the boy, the girls, and your wife.

**5 Act out the talk between:**

- John Canty and the person who knocked at the door.
- Tom and Hertford.

## Chapter XI THE PRINCE AND HIS NEW FRIEND

As Miles Hendon and the little prince were walking away from the palace, Edward heard the news; a thousand voices cried at once: "The King is dead!"

It made him very sad. He knew he had no father any more and he was alone in the world. The tears ran down his cheeks. Then there was another cry: "Long live King Edward the Sixth!"

"Ah," he thought, "I am king now!" And he felt proud.

Our friends came to the door of the inn where Miles Hendon lived. Suddenly they heard a voice:

“Where have you been all this time? If you try to run away from your father once more, I shall give you a good whipping.”

John Canty was standing before them.

“Is he really your father, lad?” asked Miles Hendon.

“No, no, he is not,” cried the little king, “I shall not go with him.”

“If so,” said Miles Hendon, “stay with me. And you,” he turned to John Canty, “you go your way, or I shall kill you!”

So John Canty had to leave Edward alone<sup>1</sup> and go away.

Edward and his new friend entered the inn and went to Miles Hendon’s room. It was a very poor room. There was only a bed, a table, two chairs, and a wash-stand in it. The little king went over to the bed and lay down upon it. He was very tired and hungry.

“Please call me when the table is laid,” he said, and fell asleep at once.

Hendon smiled and said to himself:

“He uses my bed as his own bed. He really imagines himself the Prince of Wales. But I like him and shall take care of him.<sup>2</sup> I have saved him and I shall always defend him. I shall be his elder brother.”

He walked up and down the room, talking to himself:

---

<sup>1</sup> **had to leave Edward alone** — вынужден был оставить Эдуарда в покое

<sup>2</sup> **I... shall take care of him** — я... буду заботиться о нем

“If my father lives still,<sup>1</sup> after these seven years that I have heard nothing from home, he will welcome the poor lad. So will my elder brother, Arthur.<sup>2</sup> But I can’t be sure about my other brother, Hugh... Well, we shall see... We shall start for home as soon as possible.”<sup>3</sup>

A servant entered with a hot meal. He put it on the table and left the room. Hendon went up to the bed where Edward was sleeping. The boy woke up and opened his eyes.

“Get up, we are going to have a nice supper,” said Hendon.

The prince got up and walked to the wash-stand in the corner. He stood there waiting.

“I want to wash,” he said.

“Please do!” said Miles Hendon. Still the boy stood and did not move.

Hendon was surprised. He said:

“What is the matter? Why do you not wash?”

“Pour the water, please, and do not speak so much!”

Hendon smiled to himself and did what the boy told him to do, then he stood by until he heard another command: “Give me the towel!”

Hendon took up a towel which was hanging almost under the boy’s nose and handed it to him. Then he washed his face and hands.

Edward sat down at the table and was ready to eat his supper.

---

<sup>1</sup> **If my father lives still** — Если мой отец еще жив

<sup>2</sup> **So will my elder brother, Arthur.** — И Артур, мой старший брат, также будет рад принять его.

<sup>3</sup> **as soon as possible** — как можно скорее

When Hendon came up to the table and sat down, the boy said angrily:

“How can you sit in the presence of the king?”

“Poor boy!” thought Miles Hendon. “Only a short time ago he imagined himself the prince, now he imagines that he is the king! Very well! Let him be the king. I must pretend that I believe him. There is no other way out for me.”

“I think you call yourself Miles Hendon,” Edward said.

“Yes, your majesty,” said Hendon. To himself he said:

“If I want to pretend that I believe him, I must call him ‘your majesty’. I must play my part well.”

“Tell me about yourself,” said the prince.

So Miles Hendon told him his story:

“My father, Sir Richard, is very rich but he is not very well known among lords. My mother died when I was a child. I have two brothers: Arthur, my elder,— an honest, good-hearted man; and Hugh, younger than I,— a very bad man. My cousin, Lady Edith, also lives in our house, because she has no parents, both of them died. She was sixteen when I was twenty years old. I loved her and she loved me. My brother Hugh pretended that he loved her too. But in truth<sup>1</sup> he loved her money. My father, who loved Hugh best of us all, believed him when Hugh told him many lies about me. In short,<sup>2</sup> my father sent me away from home for three years. ‘I hope,’ he said, ‘that these three years away from home and England will make a soldier and an honest man of you.’

<sup>1</sup> **in truth** — на самом деле

<sup>2</sup> **In short** — Короче говоря

“So you see, your majesty, I fought in the continental wars, and in my last battle I was taken prisoner<sup>1</sup> and spent seven years in a foreign prison. When I became free at last, I hurried to England. I have just arrived. I have neither good clothes, nor any money to buy them. But the most important thing is that I have no news from home. I do not know anything about my people at Hendon Hall.<sup>2</sup> Now I shall try to get there as soon as possible. And now, your majesty, you know my story.”

“Your story is very sad, Miles Hendon,” said the boy. “You are a good-hearted, brave man. You helped me and saved my life, so I shall help you. You can believe these words, the king has said them. What do you want? Name your wish!”

Miles said to himself:

“What imagination he has! How well he plays his part! Poor child! I shall never leave him, I shall always help him!”

He was going to thank Edward and say he did not want anything, but suddenly a happy idea came to his head: “I must not throw the chance away,<sup>3</sup> because it is not so easy to stand on your feet all the time.”

He dropped on one knee and said:

“If your majesty is pleased with his servant, I have one thing to ask of you: allow me to sit in your presence!”

Edward thought a little and then said:

<sup>1</sup> **I was taken prisoner** — я попал в плен

<sup>2</sup> **Hendon Hall** — Гендон Холл (название поместья)

<sup>3</sup> **I must not throw the chance away** — Мне никак нельзя упускать этот удобный случай

“All right, Miles Hendon, I will allow you to sit in the presence of your king, and not only you, but your children and your grandchildren as well.”<sup>1</sup>

Hendon sat down and began to eat with great appetite, saying to himself:

“It was clever of me to ask him for that. Poor boy, poor little king of the kingdom of dreams.”<sup>2</sup>

## Activities

### ? *Checking Comprehension*

#### 1 Make the right choice.

- 1) The news made Edward
  - a) happy
  - b) sad
  - c) angry
- 2) Miles Hendon and the prince came up
  - a) to the house
  - b) to the inn
  - c) to the river
- 3) Hendon’s room looked
  - a) dirty
  - b) rich
  - c) poor

<sup>1</sup> as well — также

<sup>2</sup> the kingdom of dreams — царство грез

- 4) “Please call me when the table is laid,” he said, and
  - a) lay on the sofa
  - b) fell asleep
  - c) went out
- 5) A servant put the meal on the table and
  - a) left the room
  - b) closed the door
  - c) waited
- 6) The prince got up and walked
  - a) to the table
  - b) to the wash-stand
  - c) to the bathroom
- 7) Edward sat down at the table and was ready
  - a) to talk
  - b) to listen to Hendon
  - c) to eat his supper
- 8) Hendon had to pretend that he
  - a) believed the boy
  - b) liked the boy
  - c) knew everything
- 9) Hendon’s mother died
  - a) recently
  - b) when he was a boy
  - c) when he was a child
- 10) Hendon’s father sent him away from home
  - a) for five years
  - b) for three years
  - c) for ten years



- 11) Edward allowed Hendon
  - a) to stand in his presence
  - b) to talk in his presence
  - c) to sit in his presence

**2 Say whether the statement is true or false. Correct the false one.**

- 1) Edward felt very proud when he heard the news.
- 2) They opened the door, and John Canty was standing before them.
- 3) Edward was surprised to see Hendon's room.
- 4) Hendon got angry when Edward lay on his bed.
- 5) Hendon had two brothers.
- 6) The prince walked to the wash-stand and washed his hands.
- 7) Edward got angry when Hendon sat down at the table.
- 8) Hendon's father wanted to make a soldier of him.
- 9) Hendon had had no news from his home for three years.
- 10) Edward allowed only to Hendon to sit in his presence.

**3 Answer the following questions.**

- 1) What news did the two friends hear?
- 2) Where did John Canty want the boy to go?
- 3) What did Hendon's room look like?
- 4) What did you know about Hendon's brothers?
- 5) How long ago did Hendon leave his home?
- 6) What did he say about his mother and father?

- 7) What did Edward want Hendon to do for him?
- 8) Who did Edward allow to sit in his presence?

 **Working with Vocabulary and Grammar**

**1 Say what the italicized words mean.**

- 1) Hendon thought that he would always *defend* the boy.
- 2) Hendon had *to pretend*. There was no other way *out* for him.
- 3) "You are *a good-hearted, brave* man."
- 4) "It was *clever of me* to ask him for that."

**2 Fill in the missing prepositions.**

Hendon fought \_\_\_\_\_ many wars. He spent seven years \_\_\_\_\_ prison, and when, \_\_\_\_\_ last, he became free, he hurried \_\_\_\_\_ England. He worried \_\_\_\_\_ his father, who had wanted to make a soldier \_\_\_\_\_ him, and all the people \_\_\_\_\_ Hendon Hall. Hendon was going to get \_\_\_\_\_ home \_\_\_\_\_ soon \_\_\_\_\_ possible because he had no news \_\_\_\_\_ home.

**3 Match the two halves of the sentence.**

- 1) It was clever of Hendon...
- 2) It was brave of Hendon...
- 3) It was kind of Hendon...
- 4) It was cruel of John Canty...
- 5) It was selfish of John Canty...
- 6) It was silly of the little prince...
- 7) It was wise of the little prince...

- a) ...to help Edward.
- b) ...to ask Edward for that.
- c) ...to beat the boy.
- d) ...to make Tom a thief.
- e) ...to defend the boy.
- f) ...to run out of the palace dressed in rags.
- g) ...to hide the Great Seal.

**4 Complete the sentences about yourself or somebody else.**

- 1) It is (was) silly of me (somebody) to \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2) It is (was) clever of me (somebody) to \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3) It is (was) kind of me (somebody) to \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4) It is (was) brave of me (somebody) to \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5) It is (was) rude of me (somebody) to \_\_\_\_\_.

 **Discussing the Text**

**1 Say why:**

- 1) Edward thought he was alone in the world.
- 2) Hendon was surprised when Edward stood by the wash-stand.
- 3) Hendon did what Edward told him to do.
- 4) Hendon's father had sent him away from home.
- 5) Hendon had been in prison.
- 6) Hendon was worried about his family.
- 7) Hendon asked Edward to allow him to sit in Edward's presence.

**2 Prove that:**

- 1) Edward loved his father.

- 2) Hendon pretended very well that he believed Edward.
- 3) Edward was thankful.
- 4) Hendon loved his family.

**3 Add more details to the following:**

- 1) Our friends came to the door of the inn.
- 2) It was a very poor room.
- 3) Hendon walked up and down the room.
- 4) The prince walked to the wash-stand.
- 5) Hendon had two brothers.
- 6) Hendon dropped on one knee.

**4 Imagine that you are:**

- **Edward.** Say why you were angry with Hendon.
- **John Canty.** Say what you thought of Hendon.

**5 Act out the talk between:**

- Hendon and Edward at supper.
- Hendon and Edward (Edward asks Hendon about his life and his family).



## Chapter XII THE DISAPPEARANCE OF THE PRINCE

Soon the two comrades felt very sleepy.<sup>1</sup>

“Take off my rags,” said the king.

Hendon took off the boy’s clothing, saying to himself:

“He has taken my bed again, as before. What shall I do?”

The little king said sleepily:

“You will sleep by the door and guard it.”

<sup>1</sup> the two comrades felt very sleepy — оба товарища очень захотели спать

“How well he plays his part,” thought Hendon again and lay on the floor near the door.

Soon both of them were asleep.

At 12 o’clock Hendon got up. Edward was still asleep. Miles wanted to buy a suit for the boy.

He went softly out and came softly back again in thirty or forty minutes with a boy’s second-hand suit<sup>1</sup> of cheap material.

“The inn and our breakfast are paid,”<sup>2</sup> he thought. “And I shall have money to buy two donkeys for our trip to Hendon Hall. Now I shall wake him, dress him, feed him, and then we shall go...”

“Please rise, my lord...! He does not answer. He is still asleep.”

Miles threw back the blanket — the boy was not there. He looked about him and could not see the boy’s rags anywhere.

At that moment a servant entered with the breakfast.

“Where is the boy?” cried Hendon.

The servant said in a trembling voice:

“When you left, a youth came and said that you asked him to bring the boy to you at once. He said that you were waiting for him at the end of the bridge. I brought the stranger here. He woke the lad and told him your wish. The lad was angry but put on his rags and went with the stranger.”

“Was that youth alone?” asked Hendon.

<sup>1</sup> second-hand suit — подержанный (поношенный) костюм

<sup>2</sup> The inn and our breakfast are paid — За постой и за завтрак заплачено

“Quite alone, sir.”

“Are you sure?”

“Yes, I am, sir.”

“Think well, maybe you have forgotten?”

After a moment's thought,<sup>1</sup> the servant said:

“He came alone. But now I remember that at the bridge a man came up to the two boys.”

“And then what?” cried Hendon.

“I saw nothing more.”

Hendon ran down the stairs. He said to himself:

“I am sure it was the man who called himself his father. I have lost you, my poor little mad master. No! I have not, for I shall look for you everywhere till I find you again.”

Miles Hendon hurried towards London Bridge. He hoped to find Edward there. He looked at the people whom he met on his way. No Edward!

“He did not want to leave the inn,” thought Hendon. “He was angry, but he *went*,— he went, yes, because he thought that Miles Hendon asked him to. Dear lad!”

## Activities

### ? *Checking Comprehension*

#### 1 Say who:

- 1) slept on the floor near the door.
- 2) woke up the little king.
- 3) spoke in a trembling voice.

<sup>1</sup> **After a moment's thought** — После минутного размышления

- 4) came to take the little king while Hendon was out.
- 5) went with a stranger.
- 6) was waiting for the king at the bridge.
- 7) hurried towards London Bridge.

#### 2 Say whether the statement is true or false. Correct the false one.

- 1) Hendon and the boy went to bed and soon were asleep.
- 2) Hendon came back in an hour and could not find the boy.
- 3) He found a good suit for the boy in his bag.
- 4) Hendon did not have enough money for his trip to Hendon Hall.
- 5) A stranger came and took the boy with him.
- 6) The servant was frightened when he spoke with Hendon.
- 7) Hendon did not lose hope to find the boy.

#### 3 Put the sentences in the right order.

- 1) Miles Hendon slept on the floor.
- 2) Miles Hendon hurried towards the bridge.
- 3) Soon he came back with a second-hand suit for the boy.
- 4) Miles Hendon could not see the boy anywhere.
- 5) At the bridge a man came up to the boy.
- 6) The lad said that Miles Hendon was waiting for him at the end of the bridge.

#### 4 Answer the following questions.

- 1) Hendon did not like to sleep on the floor, did he?

- 2) Where did Hendon go to while the little king was sleeping?
- 3) What did Hendon see when he came back?
- 4) What did the servant tell Hendon?
- 5) Did Hendon decide to look for the boy or did he lose hope to find him?

### Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

#### 1 Say what the italicized words mean.

- 1) "You will sleep by the door and *guard* it."
- 2) He went *softly* out and came *softly* back.
- 3) Hendon had money to buy two *donkeys* for the trip to Hendon Hall.
- 4) Hendon *threw back the blanket* – the boy was not there.
- 5) The servant spoke in a *trembling* voice.
- 6) "I shall *look for* you everywhere *till* I find you again."
- 7) *On his way* to the bridge Hendon looked at the people.

#### 2 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense form.

When the boy still (sleep) Hendon (to get) up and (go) out softly. He (want) to buy a suit for him. Hendon (know) that he (have) enough money and (can) pay for the inn and (buy) two donkeys for the trip. But when Hendon (return) he (see) that the boy (disappear). The servant (tell) him that a youth (come) and (take) the boy with him. Hendon (know) who

it (be). He (hurry) to the bridge, and on his way he (look) at everyone. He (think): "I (lose) you, my little master, but I (look) for you everywhere till I (find) you again. I never (leave) you alone."

#### 3 Match the word on the left with its opposite on the right.

- |                |               |
|----------------|---------------|
| 1) to take off | a) to walk    |
| 2) to sleep    | b) expensive  |
| 3) to stand    | c) to wake up |
| 4) to get up   | d) to lie     |
| 5) to buy      | e) to sit     |
| 6) to leave    | f) to sell    |
| 7) to bring    | g) loudly     |
| 8) to run      | h) to come    |
| 9) to lose     | i) to take    |
| 10) softly     | j) to find    |
| 11) cheap      | k) to put on  |

#### 4 Report the following in indirect speech.

Hendon thought: "The inn and our breakfast are paid. And I shall have money to buy two donkeys for our trip to Hendon Hall. Now I shall wake him, dress him, feed him, and then we shall go. Please rise, my lord!.."

### Discussing the Text

#### 1 Say why:

- 1) Hendon slept on the floor.
- 2) Hendon left the little king in the inn sleeping.
- 3) He wanted to buy two donkeys.

- 4) Hendon did not find the boy when he returned.
- 5) the servant spoke in a trembling voice.
- 6) the little king went with a stranger.
- 7) Hendon hurried towards London Bridge.

**2 Prove that:**

- 1) Hendon took care of the little prince.
- 2) Edward did not want to go with a stranger.
- 3) Hendon was not rich.

**3 Imagine that you are:**

- **Edward.** Say what happened to you that day.
- **Hendon.** Say what you did that day and what you wanted to do but you did not.

**4 Act out the talk between:**

- The servant and Hendon.
- Edward and the youth.
- The youth and the servant.

## Chapter XIII

### “THE KING IS DEAD! — LONG LIVE THE KING!”<sup>1</sup>

That same morning Tom Canty opened his eyes when it was still dark. He lay silent a few minutes, then suddenly cried out happily:

<sup>1</sup> “The King Is Dead! — Long Live the King!” — «Король умер! — Да здравствует король!» (традиционная фраза при провозглашении наследника престола королем)

“Nan, Bet, come here! Be quick! I shall tell you a wonderful story. Nan, Bet!”

A voice near him said, “What will be your commands, your majesty?”

“Commands? Oh, poor me!<sup>1</sup> Say — who am I?”

“Last night you were the Prince of Wales; today you are Edward, King of England.”

Tom hid his head among the pillows and said:

“So it was not a dream? Oh, poor me, poor me!”

He slept again, and after a time he had a pleasant dream. In his dream he went home quite happy. His dear mother kissed him and said:

“It is late — perhaps you will get up, your majesty?”

Ah! They were not the words he was waiting for.

He opened his eyes — it was not his mother, but the richly dressed First Lord of the Bedchamber.<sup>2</sup> He was standing on his knees by Tom’s bed. And the room was full of lords.

The poor boy remembered that he was still a king.

Tom sat up in bed and looked at this fine company for a moment.

Then the ceremony of dressing began. In the beginning, a shirt was taken by the Second Lord of the Bedchamber, who passed it to the First Lord of Windsor Forest.<sup>3</sup> The First Lord of Windsor Forest took the

<sup>1</sup> Oh, poor me! — О я несчастный!

<sup>2</sup> the First Lord of the Bedchamber — первый лорд опочивальни

<sup>3</sup> the First Lord of Windsor Forest — главный лесничий Виндзорского леса

shirt and passed it to the Chancellor Royal of Lancaster.<sup>1</sup> The Chancellor Royal of Lancaster took the shirt from the First Lord of Windsor Forest and passed it to the Master of Wardrobe.<sup>2</sup> The Master of Wardrobe took the shirt from the Chancellor Royal of Lancaster and passed it to the Constable of the Tower.<sup>3</sup> The Constable of the Tower took the shirt from the Master of Wardrobe and passed it to the Lord High Admiral of England.<sup>4</sup> The Lord High Admiral of England took the shirt from the Constable of the Tower and passed it to the Archbishop of Canterbury.<sup>5</sup> The Archbishop of Canterbury took the shirt from the Lord High Admiral of England and passed it to the First Lord of the Bedchamber, who took it from the Archbishop of Canterbury and put it on Tom.

“People pass buckets with water like that at a fire,” thought Tom.

Each part of his clothes went through this slow process: one lord passed it to another and so on. Tom got tired<sup>6</sup> of the ceremony. He felt almost happy when he at last saw his long silk stockings, which began their long way from the Second Lord of the Bed-

---

<sup>1</sup> **the Chancellor Royal of Lancaster** — королевский канцлер герцогства Ланкастерского

<sup>2</sup> **the Master of Wardrobe** — хранитель королевской одежды

<sup>3</sup> **the Constable of the Tower** — комендант Тауэра

<sup>4</sup> **the Lord High Admiral of England** — первый лорд адмиралтейства

<sup>5</sup> **the Archbishop of Canterbury** — архиепископ Кентерберийский

<sup>6</sup> **Tom got tired** — Тому надоела

chamber. He knew that the end of the whole business was near.

But what was this? The First Lord of the Bedchamber received the stockings and was going to put them on Tom's legs. Suddenly his face got red and he quickly passed the stockings back to the Archbishop of Canterbury and said: “Look at that, my lord!” He pointed to something that was wrong with the stockings. The Archbishop got pale and passed the stockings to the Lord High Admiral of England with the words: “Look at that, my lord!” The Admiral passed the stockings to the Constable of the Tower with the same words. The Constable of the Tower passed the stockings to the Master of Wardrobe. The stockings passed back along the line of lords who whispered those five words to one another:

“Look at that, my lord!”

At last the royal stockings reached the hands of the Second Lord of the Bedchamber.

“God have mercy upon us,”<sup>1</sup> whispered the frightened lord. “A little hole!<sup>2</sup> To the Tower with the Head Keeper of the King's Stockings!”<sup>3</sup>

But all things must have an end, so new stockings were brought. They were in good order, they had no holes. So the time came when Tom Canty was dressed and could get out of bed. A lord poured water when Tom washed, another lord stood by with a towel, and by and

---

<sup>1</sup> **God have mercy upon us** — Господи, помилуй

<sup>2</sup> **A little hole!** — Дырочка!

<sup>3</sup> **To the Tower with the Head Keeper of the King's Stockings!** — Посадить в Тауэр главного хранителя королевских чулок!

by Tom was ready for the royal hairdresser. At last the whole ceremony was over and Tom looked as pretty as a girl in his beautiful clothes and a cap. He now walked towards his breakfast-room, and as he passed the lords dropped upon their knees.

After his breakfast Tom was led to the throne-room, where he had to be busy with some important questions of the state. His 'uncle', Lord Hertford, stood by the throne to help him if he needed his help.

The work went slowly. Many state documents were read by secretaries. One of the secretaries read a report about the cost of the royal court.<sup>1</sup> The sum was so large that Tom opened his mouth in surprise. He was still more surprised when he knew that the king's servants did not get their money for the last six months because there was no money to pay them. So twelve hundred servants working in the palace had a hard life because they could not get their money for their work.

Then Tom spoke out.

"It is quite clear," he said, "that we shall soon go to the dogs<sup>2</sup> if we don't stop spending so much money. First of all we must find a smaller house. Much smaller than this one. And it is not necessary to have so many servants. Some of them do not do any useful work. We can do their work ourselves. And it is not necessary to live in the palace. I remember a small house that stands opposite the fish-market..."<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> a report about the cost of the royal court — отчет о расходах на содержание королевского двора

<sup>2</sup> we shall soon go to the dogs — мы скоро разоримся

<sup>3</sup> the fish-market ['fiʃ, mɑ:kɪt] — рыбный рынок

Lord Hertford pressed Tom's arm hard. Tom stopped and looked around. Nobody showed any surprise at his foolish speech.

The business of the state went on.<sup>1</sup> Tom got tired soon. He said to himself:

"What have I done that I am shut up here and made a king? Why may I not see the green fields and the sunshine? Why may I not breathe the fresh air?"

Then his poor head dropped to his shoulder and he fell asleep.

Everybody stood in silence around the sleeping child, and the business of the state stopped.

## Activities

### ? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Describe the ceremony of dressing putting the following phrases in the right order.

- 1) the Second Lord of the Bedchamber
- 2) the Master of Wardrobe
- 3) the First Lord of the Bedchamber
- 4) the First Lord of Windsor Forest
- 5) the Lord High Admiral of England
- 6) the Chancellor Royal of Lancaster
- 7) the Constable of the Tower
- 8) the Archbishop of Canterbury

---

<sup>1</sup> The business of the state went on. — Решение государственных вопросов продолжалось.



**2 Say who:**

- 1) woke up Tom in the morning.
- 2) began the ceremony of dressing.
- 3) finished the ceremony of dressing
- 4) got red during the ceremony.
- 5) got pale during the ceremony.
- 6) got frightened during the ceremony.
- 7) looked as pretty as a girl.
- 8) stood by the throne.
- 9) was surprised at the cost of the royal court.
- 10) did not get money for their work.

**3 Say whether the statement is true or false. Correct the false one.**

- 1) Tom got up late that morning.
- 2) Tom talked to his mother in his dream.
- 3) The ceremony of dressing made Tom tired.
- 4) There was something wrong with the stockings.
- 5) It took Tom a long time to get out of bed.
- 6) After breakfast Tom discussed some important problems.
- 7) Tom was not surprised at the cost of the royal court.
- 8) Tom said that the servants did not do any useful work.
- 9) Tom got tired and fell asleep, but the lords went on talking.

**4 Answer the following questions.**

- 1) What dream did Tom have that morning?
- 2) What “fine company” was standing by Tom’s bed?
- 3) What did Tom think of the ceremony of dressing?

- 4) What was wrong with the stockings?
- 5) What process did Tom have to go through before breakfast?
- 6) Where was Tom led to after breakfast?
- 7) What reports were read in the throne-room?
- 8) What did Tom know from those reports?
- 9) What did he say in his “foolish” speech?
- 10) Was Tom happy to be a king?

**Working with Vocabulary and Grammar**

**1 Say what the italicized words mean.**

- 1) “People pass *buckets* of water like that at a *fire*”.
- 2) When Tom saw his long silk *stockings* he knew that the end of the *whole* business was near.
- 3) He *pointed to* something that was *wrong* with the stockings.
- 4) At last the *shirt reached* Tom.
- 5) Tom Canty was dressed and could *get out of* bed.
- 6) His hair looked beautiful after the royal *hair-dresser*.
- 7) After breakfast Tom was led to the *throne-room*.
- 8) Tom missed (скучал по) the *green fields* and the *sunshine*.
- 9) Tom wanted *to breathe* the *fresh air*.

**2 Say which adjectives go with which nouns. Use them to describe the events from the chapter.**

- |              |  |           |
|--------------|--|-----------|
| 1) wonderful |  | a) mother |
| 2) pleasant  |  | b) story  |
| 3) dear      |  | c) life   |

- 4) fine
- 5) silk
- 6) royal
- 7) pretty
- 8) beautiful
- 9) important
- 10) hard
- 11) useful
- 12) foolish
- 13) green
- 14) fresh

- d) work
- e) speech
- f) air
- g) field
- h) clothes
- i) hairdresser
- j) stockings
- k) company
- l) girl
- m) question
- n) dream

**3 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense form.**

- 1) Each part of Tom's clothes (take) by one lord and (pass) to another.
- 2) At last new stockings (bring).
- 3) When Tom Canty (dress), (wash), and (brush) he (lead) to the throne-room.
- 4) Many state documents (read) and reports (make) in the throne-room.
- 5) Tom (to surprise) at the cost of the royal court.

**4 Fill in the missing prepositions.**

Tom sat \_\_\_\_\_ his bed and looked \_\_\_\_\_ the lords \_\_\_\_\_ his bed. The ceremony \_\_\_\_\_ dressing began. Each part \_\_\_\_\_ his clothes went \_\_\_\_\_ this process. It was passed \_\_\_\_\_ one lord \_\_\_\_\_ another. When his stockings began their long way \_\_\_\_\_ one lord \_\_\_\_\_ another and reached the Archbishop \_\_\_\_\_ Canterbury, he pointed \_\_\_\_\_ something that was wrong \_\_\_\_\_ the stockings. They

were passed \_\_\_\_\_ the line \_\_\_\_\_ lords. New stockings were \_\_\_\_\_ good order. Soon Tom looked \_\_\_\_\_ pretty \_\_\_\_\_ a girl \_\_\_\_\_ his beautiful clothes. \_\_\_\_\_ the throne-room he was busy \_\_\_\_\_ some questions \_\_\_\_\_ the state. Lord Hertford stood \_\_\_\_\_ the throne to help Tom.

**5 Put the words in the right order to make questions and answer them.**

- 1) about, Tom dreaming, what, was?
- 2) the, long, through, each, went, how, was, process, which, part, Tom's, of, clothes?
- 3) stockings, like, were, what, new?
- 4) sort, documents, was, after, Tom, busy, breakfast, what, of?
- 5) many, servants, their, get, could, money, why, not, work, their, for?



**Discussing the Text**

**1 Say why:**

- 1) Tom was happy in his dream.
- 2) the room was full of lords when Tom woke up.
- 3) Tom got tired of the ceremony of dressing.
- 4) one of the lords got red and another got pale.
- 5) Tom opened his mouth in surprise when some reports were read.
- 6) many servants were not paid for six months.
- 7) the author called Tom's speech "foolish".
- 8) Tom felt unhappy.

**2 Prove that:**

- 1) Tom was missing his family.
- 2) Tom understood that many servants in the royal court did not do any useful work.
- 3) the court laws were cruel.

**3 Add more details to the following:**

- 1) In the beginning, a shirt was taken by the Second Lord of the Bedchamber.
- 2) Suddenly the lord's face got red.
- 3) One lord poured water when Tom washed.
- 4) Tom was surprised to hear a report.
- 5) Tom said that it was not necessary to have so many servants.

**4 Imagine that you are:**

- **Tom.** Say what you thought and said in the throne-room.
- **Lord Hertford.** Say what you did and thought in the throne-room.

## Chapter XIV THE WHIPPING-BOY<sup>1</sup>

In the afternoon Tom had a few happy moments to himself. He was tired and wanted to have a rest. Soon a

---

<sup>1</sup> **The Whipping-Boy** — Паж для порки (Некоторые английские принцы и короли в детстве имели при себе мальчиков, которых подвергали наказанию — порке — вместо них. В совр. англ. яз. **whipping-boy** — козел отпущения.)

lad was brought to him. He was about twelve years old. He looked very sad. He came up to Tom and fell on one knee before him.

Tom sat still and looked at the lad in silence a moment. Then he said:

“Rise, lad! Who are you? What do you want?”

The boy rose and said:

“You must remember me, my lord. I am your whipping-boy.”

“My *whipping-boy*?”

“Yes, my lord. I am Humphrey Marlow.”

Tom did not know what to say.

“It seems to me that I remember you,” he said at last. “But I can’t remember well, as I am ill.”

“Oh, my poor master,” cried the whipping-boy, thinking to himself: “It is true — he is mad. But I was told not to notice that anything was wrong with him.”<sup>1</sup>

“I often forget many things these days,” said Tom. “But pay no attention to it. Just tell me what you want!”

“Two days ago when your majesty made three mistakes in your Greek in the morning lessons — do you remember it?”

“Yes, I think I do.”

“Your teacher promised to whip me for it and —”

“Whip *you*?” said Tom in surprise. “Why did he want to whip you for my mistakes?”

“Ah, my lord, you have forgotten again. He always whips me when you do not know your lessons.”

---

<sup>1</sup> **But I was told not to notice that anything was wrong with him** — Но мне же сказали, чтобы я не замечал, что с ним что-то неладно

“True, true — I have forgotten,” said Tom. “You teach me first, and he says that you do not know how to teach me well, and if I make a mistake —”

“Oh, my lord! What are you saying? I, your servant, teach you? Never! But this is how it is: nobody may strike the Prince of Wales, so when he makes mistakes, I get the blows. And that is right — it is my work and I get money for it.”

Tom looked at the boy and said:

“And have they beaten you for my mistakes in Greek, my poor friend?”

“No, your majesty, they were going to beat me today, but they did not do it because of the death of the King. Now you are no more Prince of Wales, you are the King of England, and I am afraid that you will not continue your studies. You will burn your books and turn the teachers away. Then I am lost<sup>1</sup> and my poor sisters with me.”

“Lost? Why?”

“My back is my bread.<sup>2</sup> Oh, my lord! If you stop studying, you will not need any whipping-boy and I shall have no work. Don’t turn me away.”

Tom was sorry for the boy. He said:

“Rise, Humphrey Marlow, you will always have the post of whipping-boy at the royal house of England. I shall take my books again and study so badly that you will get money three times more than before.”<sup>3</sup>

“Oh, thank you, my dear master! Now I shall be happy all my days,” cried Humphrey.

Tom was clever enough to understand that Humphrey could be useful to him. He asked Humphrey to tell him about the people in the palace and the prince’s lessons in the school-room. At the end of an hour he knew many things about the prince; so he decided to talk with Humphrey every day.

After Humphrey had gone, Lord Hertford came with some news for Tom. The Lords of the Council<sup>1</sup> asked his majesty to dine in public<sup>2</sup> in a day or two in order to show everybody that he was quite well. Lord Hertford wanted to instruct Tom. But to his great joy, Tom needed very little instruction.

As Lord Hertford saw that his memory was so much better, he decided to ask Tom about the Great Seal. But Tom did not know what it was.

“What was it like,<sup>3</sup> my lord?” asked Tom.

“Oh, he is still mad,” thought Lord Hertford, and he began to talk about other things; he tried to make Tom forget the Seal.

## Activities

### ? *Checking Comprehension*

#### 1 Say who:

- 1) was brought to Tom in the afternoon.

<sup>1</sup> **The Lords of the Council** — Лорды государственного совета

<sup>2</sup> **to dine in public** [ˈpʌblɪk] — обедать в присутствии людей

<sup>3</sup> **What was it like...?** — Какова она с виду...?

<sup>1</sup> **Then I am lost** — Тогда я погиб

<sup>2</sup> **My back is my bread** — *зд.* Моя спина кормит меня

<sup>3</sup> **you will get money three times more than before** — ты будешь получать в три раза больше денег, чем раньше

- 2) was the whipping-boy.
- 3) made mistakes in Greek two days before.
- 4) promised to whip Humphrey Marlow.
- 5) could be useful to Tom in the royal court.
- 6) came to instruct Tom.
- 7) tried to make Tom forget the Seal.

**2 Say whether the statement is true or false. Correct the false one.**

- 1) The boy was twelve years old.
- 2) He looked very happy.
- 3) Tom immediately remembered the boy.
- 4) The whipping-boy thought that the king looked strange.
- 5) The whipping-boy got blows for the king's mistakes.
- 6) The whipping-boy liked his work.
- 7) The whipping-boy told a lot of interesting things to Tom.
- 8) Lord Hertford came with good news for Tom.
- 9) Lord Hertford decided not to ask Tom about the Great Seal.

**3 Put the sentences in the right order.**

- 1) The boy fell on one knee before Tom.
- 2) He said he was the prince's whipping-boy.
- 3) A boy was brought to Tom's room.
- 4) Tom asked the boy what he wanted.
- 5) Tom was sorry for the boy and promised not to turn him away.
- 6) "You will get money three times more than before," he said.

- 7) "I am your whipping-boy," he said.
- 8) Tom thought that the boy could be useful to him.

**4 Answer the following questions.**

- 1) How old was the whipping-boy?
- 2) Did he look happy or sad when he came to Tom's room?
- 3) Tom had never seen him before, had he?
- 4) What did the whipping-boy tell Tom about his duties?
- 5) Did the boy like his work?
- 6) What do you know about the boy's family?
- 7) What did Tom feel about the whipping boy?
- 8) How useful could the whipping-boy be to Tom?
- 9) What did Lord Hertford ask Tom about?
- 10) What did Lord Hertford feel about Tom?

 **Working with Vocabulary and Grammar**

**1 Say what the italicized words mean.**

- 1) Nobody may *strike* the Prince of Wales.
- 2) "You will *burn* the books and *turn* the teachers away."
- 3) Lord Hertford saw that his memory was *much better*.
- 4) To his great *joy*, Tom needed very little instruction.

**2 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense form.**

It (surprise) Tom when he (know) that the boy (be whipped) for his, Tom's, mistakes. Tom (be sorry)

for the boy, and he (promise) never (turn) him away. He (say) that the boy always (have) that post. Tom also (say) that he (study) so badly that the boy (get) much more money for his work. Tom (understand) that the whipping boy (can be) useful to him. Tom (decide) that he (talk) with the whipping-boy every day.

**3 Match the two halves of the sentence.**

- 1) Tom was clever enough
- 2) Lord Hertford was careful enough
- 3) Miles Hendon was strong enough
- 4) The whipping-boy was informed enough
- 5) John Canty was drunk enough
- a) not to understand what he was doing.
- b) not to pay attention to Tom's words.
- c) not to remind Tom about the Great Seal.
- d) to understand that he needed that boy.
- e) to frighten his enemies)

**4 Ask questions as in the model.**

Model: Are you tall enough to *play basketball*?

- 1) Are you kind enough to \_\_\_\_\_?
- 2) Are you brave enough to \_\_\_\_\_?
- 3) Is your house big enough to \_\_\_\_\_?
- 4) Are you hungry enough \_\_\_\_\_?
- 5) Are you strong enough to \_\_\_\_\_?
- 6) Is your street safe enough to \_\_\_\_\_?
- 7) Do you have enough money to \_\_\_\_\_?
- 8) Do you have enough time to \_\_\_\_\_?

**5 Say which noun goes with *a little* and which with *a few*.**

rest, things, attention, mistakes, blows, work, money, bread, people, news, instruction, clothes, air, time, food, paper, questions, problems.

 **Discussing the Text**

**1 Say why:**

- 1) Humphrey Marlow was called a whipping-boy.
- 2) the whipping-boy came to Tom's room.
- 3) the prince's teacher promised to whip Humphrey Marlow two days before?
- 4) the whipping-boy was not whipped that day.
- 5) the whipping-boy was afraid that Tom would not study any longer.
- 6) Tom thought that the whipping-boy could be useful to him.
- 7) Lord Hertford came to see Tom.
- 8) Lord Hertford tried to make Tom forget the Great Seal.

**2 Prove that:**

- 1) the whipping-boy took Tom for the Prince of Wales.
- 2) Tom was surprised to know about the whipping-boy's work.
- 3) Tom was sorry for the whipping-boy.
- 4) Tom played his part well.

**3 Add more details to the following:**

- 1) "I often forget many things these days," said Tom.

- 2) "Nobody may strike Prince of Wales."
- 3) "I am afraid that you will not continue your studies."
- 4) "You will always have the post of whipping-boy at the royal house of England."
- 5) The Lords of the Council asked Tom to dine in public.

**4 Imagine that you are:**

- **Humphrey Marlow.** Say what you thought of the little king when you saw him that afternoon.
- **Tom.** Say what you thought of the whipping boy.
- **Lord Hertford.** Say about your visit to the king and what you thought about his health.

**5 Act out the talk between:**

- The whipping boy and Tom.
- Lord Hertford and Tom.

**6 Say what you understand by the following:**

- 1) "My back is my bread."
- 2) "You will always have the post of whipping-boy at the royal house of England."

**7 What is your opinion?**

- 1) What do you think of the work of the whipping boy? Do you find it funny? cruel? useful? necessary? important? Give reasons for your choice.
- 2) Do we have "whipping-boys" nowadays?

## Chapter XV TOM AS KING

On his fourth day in the palace, Tom was taken to a large hall, where he always met great lords. He went to a window and looked out. Suddenly he saw a big crowd of men, women and children. They were coming towards the gates.

"What is the matter?" said Tom.

He called a page and sent him to the Captain of the Guard<sup>1</sup> to find out what the matter was.

In a few minutes the page came back to say that the crowd was following a woman and her little girl to execution for some crime.

Tom looked out of the window at the poor woman and the girl. Death — for these unhappy people. For the moment he forgot that he was not the real king and gave the command:

"Bring them here!"

In a few minutes some officers entered with the woman and her daughter who was about nine years old.

"What have they done?" asked Tom.

"Your majesty, they have sold themselves to the devil<sup>2</sup> that is their crime."

"Where was this done? And when?" asked Tom.

"At midnight, in December, in an old church, your majesty."

---

<sup>1</sup> **the Captain** [ˈkæptɪn] **of the Guard** — начальник городской стражи

<sup>2</sup> **they have sold themselves to the devil** — они продали свои души дьяволу

“Who was present there?”

“Only these two, your majesty, and the devil.”

“Then how was it known?”<sup>1</sup>

“Some people saw them when they were going to the church, your majesty, and thought that something was wrong. Soon after that the woman and the girl, with the help of the devil, made a terrible storm.”

Tom thought for a minute and then said:

“Did this woman also suffer from the storm?”

“Yes, she did, your majesty, she lost her house and she and her child are homeless now.”

“Then I do not understand why she brought about the storm<sup>2</sup> from which she suffered herself. Is she mad? If she is, she does not know what she does.”

Everybody was surprised at the cleverness of the king. The woman had stopped crying and was looking up at Tom with hope.<sup>3</sup>

Tom saw this and felt sorry for her.

“How did they bring the storm?” he asked.

“They took off their stockings, your majesty.”

Now it was Tom’s turn to be surprised.<sup>4</sup>

“How strange!” he said. Then he turned to the woman: “Show us your power. I want to see a storm.”

---

<sup>1</sup> Then how was it known? — В таком случае, как же это стало известно?

<sup>2</sup> why she brought about the storm — почему она вызвала бурю

<sup>3</sup> The woman had stopped crying and was looking up at Tom with hope. — Женщина уже перестала плакать и смотрела на Тома с надеждой.

<sup>4</sup> Now it was Tom’s turn to be surprised — Теперь пришла очередь Тома удивляться

“Oh, my lord the King,” said the woman, “I have no power.”

“Don’t be afraid,” said Tom. “Make a storm for me. Do this and you will go out free with your child.”

The woman fell at his feet and cried that she had no power to make a storm. She said:

“I cannot do what the King wants.”

Tom repeated his command, but the woman only cried and said she could not do it. At last Tom said, “You are free, good woman, you and your child. And now — don’t be afraid, take off your stockings. Make me a storm and you will be rich.”

The woman took off her stockings and her little girl’s too, but nothing happened.

Tom was very sorry and said:

“It’s true; you have no power. Well, go your way in peace,<sup>1</sup> and if the power comes back to you, do not forget to come and bring me a storm.”

## Activities

### ? *Checking Comprehension*

#### 1 **Make the right choice.**

- 1) Tom went to a window
  - a) and opened it
  - b) and looked out
  - c) to have a rest

---

<sup>1</sup> go your way in peace — иди своей дорогой с миром



- 2) Tom was surprised to see
  - a) a crowd of people
  - b) the Captain of the Guard
  - c) those poor people
- 3) Her daughter was about
  - a) nine years old
  - b) five years old
  - c) ten years old
- 4) They have sold themselves
  - a) to a farmer
  - b) to a lord
  - c) to the devil
- 5) The woman and the little girl
  - a) made a terrible storm
  - b) made a terrible noise
  - c) stole some food
- 6) Everybody was surprised at
  - a) the king's words
  - b) the woman's story
  - c) the cleverness of the king
- 7) The woman looked up at Tom with
  - a) fear in her eyes
  - b) tears in her eyes
  - c) hope in her eyes
- 8) The woman and her daughter took off their stockings but
  - a) nothing happened
  - b) the crowd wanted something more
  - c) it surprised nobody

- 2) **Say whether the statement is true or false. Correct the false one.**
  - 1) In the centre of the square Tom saw a crowd of people.
  - 2) The crowd was following two women to execution for some crime.
  - 3) The Captain said they had sold themselves to the devil.
  - 4) They made a terrible rain.
  - 5) Tom did not believe that the woman had brought about the storm.
  - 6) Tom wanted the woman to show him her power.
  - 7) The woman did not want to do what the king asked her to do.
  - 8) Tom let the woman go free, didn't he?
- 3) **Put Tom's questions in the right order.**
  - 1) How did they bring the storm?
  - 2) Who was present there?
  - 3) What is the matter?
  - 4) Where was this done?
  - 5) What have they done?
  - 6) Did the woman also suffer from the storm?
  - 7) How was it known?
- 4) **Answer the following questions.**
  - 1) What did Tom see when he looked out of the window?
  - 2) What command did he give?
  - 3) For what crime did the woman and her daughter were led to execution?

- 4) The woman suffered herself, didn't she?
- 5) What did Tom promise if the woman showed her power?
- 6) What did Tom want the woman to do for him?

## Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

### 1 Say what the italicized words mean.

- 1) A woman and her little girl were led *to execution* for some *crime*.
- 2) Some people saw them when they were going to the *church*.
- 3) "Did this woman also *suffer* from the storm?"
- 4) She *lost her house*, and she and her child are *homeless* now.
- 5) Everybody was surprised at the *cleverness* of the king.
- 6) It was Tom's *turn* to be surprised.
- 7) "Do this, and you will *go out free* with your child."
- 8) The woman had no *power* to make a storm.

### 2 Fill in the missing prepositions.

\_\_\_\_\_ his fourth day \_\_\_\_\_ the palace Tom looked \_\_\_\_\_ the window and was surprised \_\_\_\_\_ the crowd \_\_\_\_\_ the gates. Soon he found \_\_\_\_\_ that the crowd followed a woman and her child \_\_\_\_\_ execution \_\_\_\_\_ some crime. Tom commanded the officer to bring them \_\_\_\_\_. Asking questions Tom found \_\_\_\_\_ what the woman's crime was: she had made a terrible storm \_\_\_\_\_ the help \_\_\_\_\_ the

devil, and \_\_\_\_\_ her stockings. Tom got surprised \_\_\_\_\_ these words, and asked the woman to make a storm \_\_\_\_\_ him. The woman and the girl took \_\_\_\_\_ their stockings but nothing happened. Tom was sorry \_\_\_\_\_ the poor woman and her little girl. He understood that it was not \_\_\_\_\_ their power to bring a storm, and he allowed them to go their way \_\_\_\_\_ peace.

### 3 Match the two halves of the sentence.

- 1) Tom sent the Captain of the Guard
- 2) In a few minutes the page came back
- 3) They have sold themselves to the devil
- 4) Tom asked the woman not to forget
  - a) to bring him a storm
  - b) to make a terrible storm
  - c) to say what the matter was
  - d) to find out what the matter was

### 4 Make up your own sentences as in the models:

Model 1: It was Tom's turn to be surprised.

Model 2: It is (was) my turn to ask you a question.



## Discussing the Text

### 1 Say why:

- 1) the crowd followed the woman and her child.
- 2) Tom commanded to bring the woman and her child in.
- 3) the woman and her child were homeless.

- 4) everybody was surprised at Tom's questions.
- 5) Tom was sorry for the woman and the little girl.
- 6) the woman and her daughter took off their stockings.
- 7) Tom let the woman and the little girl go.

**2 Prove that:**

- 1) Tom was a clever boy.
- 2) Tom was a brave boy.
- 3) Tom was sorry for the poor and kind to them.
- 4) the laws of the country were cruel.

**3 Add more details to the following:**

- 1) Soon the page came back.
- 2) Some officers entered with a woman and her daughter.
- 3) The woman also suffered from the storm.
- 4) Tom turned to the woman.

**4 Imagine that you are:**

- **Tom.** Say what happened on your fourth day in the palace.
- **The woman.** Say what had happened to you before you found yourself in the palace.
- **The page** who brought the woman and the child in and answered Tom's questions. Were you surprised at anything?

**5 Act out the talk between:**

- Tom and the page.
- Tom and the woman.

**6 What is your opinion?**

- 1) Do you think Tom believed that the woman had made a storm? Give reasons for your answer.
- 2) Do you think many people in London were:
  - a) cruel;
  - b) superstitious (суперверные);
  - c) fearful?
 Give reasons for your choice.

## Chapter XVI

### KING FOO-FOO THE FIRST<sup>1</sup>

Edward and the lad walked for a long way. Then the king stopped and said:

"Where are you taking me? I shall not walk on. I shall stop where I am. Hendon must come to me, not *me* to him."<sup>2</sup>

But the lad answered:

"Do you want to stay here when your friend is lying wounded in the wood?"

"Wounded?" cried the king. "Wounded? Let us hurry then! Quick, quick, my lad! Where is the wood?"

The lad led him on until they came to an old farmhouse with a barn near it. They entered the barn. No Hendon there!

The king looked angrily at the lad and asked:

"Where is he?"

<sup>1</sup> **King Foo-Foo the First** — Король Фу-Фу Первый

<sup>2</sup> **not *me* to him** — а не я к нему

A mocking laugh was the answer:<sup>1</sup> John Canty, who had followed them all the way, stood before him.

“So you have run from your father?”

The king said to him angrily:

“You are not my father. I do not know you. I am the king. If you have hidden my servant, find him for me or I shall order to hang you.”

“You are mad, it is quite clear,” answered John Canty. “I don’t want to beat you, but if you continue to talk like that, I shall have to give you a good whipping.<sup>2</sup> Don’t forget that I have killed a man and cannot stay at home. And I cannot leave you there because I need your help. My name is changed now. It is Hobbs. John Hobbs. And remember that your name is Jack now, not Tom. Where is your mother? And your sisters? They did not come to the place I told them to.<sup>3</sup> Do you know where they are?”

The king said, “Do not ask me about your family. I don’t know anything.”

The youth that had brought Edward to the wood began to laugh, but Canty — or Hobbs, as he now called himself,— stopped him and said:

“Hugo, you must not quarrel with him,<sup>4</sup> he is mad. Sit down, Jack, and rest a little.”

---

<sup>1</sup> **A mocking laugh was the answer** — В ответ раздался издевательский хохот

<sup>2</sup> **if you continue to talk like that, I shall have to give you a good whipping** — если ты будешь продолжать так разговаривать, мне придется тебя как следует выпороть

<sup>3</sup> **to the place I told them to** — туда, куда я велел им прийти

<sup>4</sup> **quarrel** [ˈkwɒrəl] **with him** — ссориться с ним

Hobbs and Hugo began talking together in low voices, and the king went to the farthest corner of the barn as he wanted to be alone for a few minutes.

Edward had no blanket, so he covered himself with straw.

He lay in the corner of the barn and thought about the death of his dear father. There were tears on his face. After some time — he could not tell how long — he closed his eyes and fell asleep.

Edward was awakened by a loud laughter and many voices talking together.<sup>1</sup> He opened his eyes and saw a big crowd of people in rags. From their talk he understood that all of them were thieves and beggars. He also understood that John Canty had been their friend for a long time. John Canty told them how he had killed a man. The others began to tell their stories too. One of these stories was very sad.

“I was a farmer,” began a man whom everybody called Yokel. “I had a kind wife and nice children. Now I have neither a wife nor children. They are dead. I am glad that they died.

“My old mother tried to earn her bread.<sup>2</sup> She took care of sick people.<sup>3</sup> One of them died and the doctors did not know why. So by the English law she was burned for a

---

<sup>1</sup> **by a loud laughter and many voices talking together** — громким смехом и множеством голосов, звучащих одновременно

<sup>2</sup> **My old mother tried to earn [з:п] her bread** — Старуха мать старалась заработать на пропитание

<sup>3</sup> **She took care of sick people** — Она ухаживала за больными людьми

witch<sup>1</sup> and my children stood and looked how it was done. English law! Stand up, all of you, raise your cups and drink to the kind English law<sup>2</sup> that killed a honest woman!

“Then I had to beg from house to house — I and my wife and the children. But the English law does not allow people to go hungry, so we were caught and whipped many times. Drink, all of you, to the kind English law which killed my wife by whipping her.

“As I could not see my children hungry, I begged again, and at last I was sold as a slave. A slave! Do you understand that word? An English slave! I have run away from my master, and when I am found,<sup>3</sup> the English law will hang me.

Suddenly a loud voice was heard:

“No, it will *not* hang you, I shall not allow it.”

All turned and saw the small figure of the little king who had come out of his corner.

“Who is it? *What* is it? Who are you?” cried many voices.

“I am Edward, King of England.”

Wild laughter followed. The angry king cried out:

“You, thieves and beggars, this is how<sup>4</sup> you thank your king.”

The laughter grew louder<sup>5</sup> and louder, and at last John Hobbs shouted to the crowd:

<sup>1</sup> **by the English law she was burned for a witch** — согласно английским законам она была сожжена как ведьма

<sup>2</sup> **drink to the kind English law** — выпейте за добрый английский закон

<sup>3</sup> **when I am found** — когда меня найдут

<sup>4</sup> **this is how** — так вот как

<sup>5</sup> **The laughter grew louder** — Смех становился все громче

“Friends, this is my mad son, don’t pay any attention to him, he thinks he is the king.”

“I *am* the king,” said Edward proudly.

The crowd of drunken people liked his words very much. Many voices began to shout:

“Long live Edward, King of England!”

The little king bowed his head and said:

“I thank you, my good people.”

The laughter grew even louder. Somebody shouted:

“Foo-Foo the First. King of Fools!”

Soon the whole crowd was shouting:

“Long live Foo-Foo the First!”

Before Edward could do anything, he was crowned with a tin basin,<sup>1</sup> a dirty old blanket was put on his shoulders, and he himself was put on the throne — a barrel.<sup>2</sup> Then all of them fell upon their knees and began to shout:

“Oh, sweet king, oh, king Foo-Foo!”

They laughed at him and pushed him and pretended to kiss his feet.

Tears of shame and anger stood in the little king’s eyes.

## Activities

### ? *Checking Comprehension*

#### 1 Say who:

1) led Edward to the wood.

<sup>1</sup> **he was crowned** [kraʊnd] **with a tin basin** [ˈbeɪsn] — он был коронован жестяной миской

<sup>2</sup> **a barrel** [ˈbærəl] — бочка, бочонок

- 2) came to an old farm-house.
- 3) followed Edward and the lad.
- 4) is John Hobbs.
- 5) is Jack.
- 6) is Hugo.
- 7) slept in the corner of the barn.
- 8) awakened Edward.
- 9) was burned for a witch.
- 10) was sold as a slave.
- 11) shouted: "Long live Edward, King of England."
- 12) was crowned with a tin basin and put on the throne.

**2 Say whether the statement is true or false. Correct the false one**

- 1) Edward believed that Hendon was lying wounded in the wood.
- 2) Edward did not want to walk on because he was afraid.
- 3) John Canty brought Edward to the barn.
- 4) The lad's name was Jack.
- 5) Edward slept on the floor of the farmhouse because he was very tired.
- 6) Yokel's story was very sad and frightening.
- 7) Tom Canty's friends were drunken thieves and beggars.
- 8) Tom Canty's friends made Edward their king.
- 9) Edward was happy to be their king.

**3 Put the sentences in the right order.**

- 1) Hugo began to laugh at Edward.

- 2) The crowd of beggars and thieves shouted that Edward was their king.
- 3) Edward came out of the corner and said: "I shall not allow it."
- 4) John Canty followed them all the way.
- 5) The lad brought Edward to the barn.
- 6) Edward went to the corner of the barn and fell asleep there.
- 7) Edward heard a sad story of the beggar.
- 8) "If I am found the English law will hang me."
- 9) The beggars and thieves pretended that they loved the king.
- 10) Edward could not do anything.

**4 Answer the following questions.**

- 1) Where did Hugo bring Edward?
- 2) What new names did John Canty take for himself and for Edward?
- 3) Where did Edward find a place for himself to sleep?
- 4) What was he thinking about before he fell asleep?
- 5) What awakened Edward?
- 6) What were those thieves and beggars talking about?
- 7) What made Edward come out of the corner and say: "I shall not allow it."
- 8) The thieves and beggars did not believe Edward, did they?
- 9) The thieves and beggars were mocking at him, weren't they?
- 10) In what way did the thieves and beggars mock at Edward?

11) What was Edward feeling during the so called "coronation"?

### Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

#### 1 Say what the italicized words mean.

- 1) Your friend is lying *wounded* in the wood.
- 2) They came to an old *farm-house* with a *barn* near it.
- 3) John Canty *followed* them all the way.
- 5) Edward had no *blanket*, and he covered himself with *straw*.
- 6) Edward *was awakened* by a loud *laughter*.
- 7) "*Raise your cups* and drink to the kind English law."
- 8) "I was sold as a *slave*."
- 9) Tears of *shame* and *anger* stood in the little king's eyes.

#### 2 Complete the sentences with the words from the box.

pretended  
followed  
hungry  
louder  
feet  
angrily  
death  
voices  
tears

- 1) The king looked \_\_\_\_\_ at the lad.
- 2) They talked together in low \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3) He thought of his father's \_\_\_\_\_, and there were \_\_\_\_\_ on his face.
- 4) The English law doesn't allow people to go \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5) Wild laughter \_\_\_\_\_, and it grew \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6) They \_\_\_\_\_ they kissed his \_\_\_\_\_.

#### 3 Match the two halves of the sentence. Translate them into Russian.

- 1) Edward was worried about his friend...
  - 2) John Canty thought that the boy was mad...
  - 3) He wanted to be alone...
  - 4) They talked in loud voices...
  - 5) He could not see his children hungry...
  - 6) John Canty needed his son's help...
- a) ...so he begged in the streets.  
b) ...so he did not pay attention to his words.  
c) ...so he did everything to return him.  
d) ...so he followed the lad.  
e) ...so he went to the farthest corner of the barn.  
f) ...so Edward could hear a very sad story.

#### 4 Put the verbs in brackets into Past Simple Passive.

- 1) Edward (lead) to the wood.
- 2) He (awaken) by a wild laughter of beggars and thieves.
- 3) By the English law she (burn) for a witch.

- 4) It (do) in the presence of her children.
- 5) They (catch) and (whip) many times.
- 6) I (sell) as a slave.
- 7) He said that when he (find) the English law would hang him.
- 8) Edward (crown) with a tin basin, and a dirty blanket (put) on his shoulders.



### *Discussing the Text*

#### 1 Say why:

- 1) Edward followed the lad to the wood.
- 2) John Canty could not stay at home.
- 3) John Canty changed his and Edward's names.
- 4) there were tears on Edward's face when he was lying in the corner of the barn.
- 5) Yokel had neither a wife no children that time.
- 6) Yokel's mother was burned for a witch.
- 7) his family was caught and whipped many times.
- 8) Yokel was sold as a slave.
- 9) the beggars and thieves laughed at Edward.
- 10) the thieves and beggars crowned him.
- 11) tears of shame and anger stood in Edward's eyes.

#### 2 Prove that:

- 1) Edward was brave and thankful.
- 2) Edward was very unhappy with the beggars and thieves.
- 3) there was a lot of injustice (несправедливость) in England then.

#### 3 Add more details to the following:

- 1) Edward told John Canty not to ask him about John Canty's family.
- 2) John Canty asked Hugo not to quarrel with Edward.
- 3) The thieves and beggars crowned Edward.

#### 4 Imagine that you are:

- **Hugo.** Say how you brought Edward to the wood.
- **John Canty.** Say how you managed to get your "son" back to you.
- **Edward.** Say a) what happened to you when a lad took you to the wood; b) what happened to you when you were awakened by a loud laughter.

#### 5 Act out the talk between:

- Edward and Hugo on the way to the wood.
- Edward and John Canty.
- Edward and one of the beggars at the "coronation".

#### 6 What is your opinion?

John Canty said: "Hugo, you mustn't quarrel with him, he is mad. Sit down, Jack, and rest a little." Do you think John Canty felt some sympathy (сочувствие) for Edward? Or do you have another opinion?



## THE PRINCE WITH THE TRAMPS

The band of tramps got up early in the morning and started forward on their way.<sup>1</sup>

The leader of the band ordered Hugo to look after<sup>2</sup> 'Jack'. He also commanded John Canty to keep away<sup>3</sup> from his son and let him alone.

By and by the tramps came to a small farm-house and made the farmer prepare a breakfast for them. The trembling farmer was so frightened that he gave them all the food he had. While the tramps were eating the food they were throwing offal and vegetables at the farmer and his family. When they took their leave<sup>4</sup> they promised to come back and burn the house over the heads of the family<sup>5</sup> if they let anybody know about the band.

After a long walk, the band came to a large village. They rested for about an hour and then decided to enter the village at different points<sup>6</sup> and see what they could steal there.

'Jack' was sent with Hugo. After a short time Hugo said:

"I see nothing to steal. So we have to beg!"

"We? Oh, no," said the king. "You can beg, if you want to. But I will not beg!"

"You will not beg!" cried out the youth with surprise. "What is the matter with you?"

"What do you mean?"<sup>1</sup> said the king.

"Mean? You have begged in the streets of London all your life, haven't you?"

"I? You are an idiot!" the king cried out angrily.

"Your father says that you have begged all your life," Hugo repeated. "Did he lie?"

"Do you call *him* my father? Yes, he lied."

"If I tell him what you said about him, he will give you a hard whipping!"

"I will tell him myself," the king said.

"You are a brave boy," said Hugo. "I like you for that. Listen, what shall we do if you don't like begging? Let us try and steal food from kitchens!"

"Stop talking about such things. I am tired of you,"<sup>2</sup> said the king.

"Now look here,"<sup>3</sup> said Hugo. "You do not want to steal and you do not want to beg. But I will make you do something else. See, here comes a man that looks very good-hearted. I shall pretend to be ill. You must ask him for a penny for your sick brother."

When the stranger came near, Hugo fell down on the ground and began to moan and groan<sup>4</sup> and pretend he was in agony.

<sup>1</sup> **started forward on their way** — отправились в путь

<sup>2</sup> **to look after** — присматривать за

<sup>3</sup> **to keep away** — держаться в стороне

<sup>4</sup> **When they took their leave** — Когда они уходили

<sup>5</sup> **over the heads of the family** — зд. вместе с хозяевами

<sup>6</sup> **at different points** [pɔɪnts] — с разных концов

<sup>1</sup> **What do you mean** — Что ты имеешь в виду

<sup>2</sup> **I am tired of you** — Ты мне надоел

<sup>3</sup> **Now look here** — Послушай

<sup>4</sup> **began to moan** [məʊn] **and groan** [grəʊn] — начал стонать и завывать

“Oh, dear sir,” he was shouting, “give us a penny, only a penny to buy a little food for my little brother and myself!”

“I am not his brother,” said the king angrily.

“What! Not his brother?” said the stranger. “Who is he, then?”

“He is a beggar and a thief,” said the king. “He stole your money from your pocket but you did not see it.”

Next moment Hugo was up and off like the wind.<sup>1</sup>

The gentleman ran after him and the king ran away from the place. Edward took the first turning and did not stop until he was far from the village. Then he began to walk as fast as he could.

He walked for several hours. He was hungry and also very tired. So he stopped at a farm-house. He was going to speak, but the farmer did not want to listen to him, he drove him away. The king's clothes were against him.<sup>2</sup>

He walked on and on. The night came on, dark and cold. Suddenly he saw an open door of a barn. The king waited some time and listened. There was no sound in the barn. He got so cold, that at last he decided to risk everything and enter. He heard voices behind him and hid himself in a corner of the barn. Two farmers entered and did some work in the barn. When they finished it, they went away and shut the door behind them.

The night wind was rising, but it was like music for the king: he was warm, he was happy. Very soon he fell asleep.

<sup>1</sup> **Next moment Hugo was up and off like the wind** — В один момент Гуго вскочил и унесся как ветер

<sup>2</sup> **The king's clothes were against him** — зд. Лохмотья короля не внушали доверия

? **Checking Comprehension**

1 **Make the right choice.**

- 1) The band of tramps made the farmer
  - a) to give them all the food he had
  - b) to prepare breakfast for them
  - c) to give them some clothes
- 2) The band of tramps decided
  - a) to steal something in the village
  - b) to have a rest in the village
  - c) to beg in the village
- 3) When the stranger came near Hugo
  - a) began to cry loudly
  - b) fell down upon his knees
  - c) began to moan and groan
- 4) When the little king came to a village
  - a) he was hungry and very tired
  - b) he was tired but very glad
  - c) he was hungry but happy
- 5) The farmer listened to him
  - a) but did not give him any food
  - b) and drove him away
  - c) gave him some food
- 6) The king hid himself
  - a) under the rags
  - b) under a heap of straw
  - c) in the corner of the barn

2 Say whether the statement is true or false. Correct the false one.

- 1) The leader of the band looked after the little king.
- 2) The farmer was happy to give the band all the food he had.
- 3) The band of tramps gave some food and vegetables to the farmer's family.
- 4) The tramps decided to have a rest in the village.
- 5) Hugo and the little king went to the village to beg.
- 6) Hugo stole a bag of money from the stranger.
- 7) The gentleman ran after Hugo, and soon he caught him up.
- 8) It was very cold, and the little king found a warm place in the barn.

3 Answer the following questions.

- 1) Where did the tramps come to?
- 2) Was the farmer happy to have the tramps in his house or was he frightened?
- 3) In what way did the tramps frighten the farmer and his family?
- 4) What the tramps were going to do in a large village?
- 5) What did Hugo want the little king to do in the village?
- 6) How did Edward manage to run away from Hugo and the tramps?
- 7) Where did the king find a place to sleep?
- 8) Here are the answers to some questions. What are the questions?

- a) Offal and vegetables.
- b) To burn their house.
- c) "No, he is not my brother."
- d) He was warm and happy.

### Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 Say what the italicized words mean.

- 1) *The band of tramps* came to a large village.
- 2) He wanted *to steal* some food from the kitchen.
- 3) They decided *to enter* the village at different points.
- 4) "Here comes a man that looks *good-hearted*."
- 5) He began to walk *as fast as* he could.
- 6) The farmer did not want to speak to him, he *drove* him away.
- 7) The night wind *was rising*.

2 Fill in the missing prepositions.

- 1) The tramps threw offal and vegetables \_\_\_\_\_ the farmer and his family.
- 2) The band \_\_\_\_\_ tramps came \_\_\_\_\_ a large village \_\_\_\_\_ a long walk.
- 3) The little king did not want to beg and steal, and Hugo cried \_\_\_\_\_ surprise, "What is the matter \_\_\_\_\_ you?"
- 4) Ask him a penny \_\_\_\_\_ your sick brother.
- 5) Hugo stole money \_\_\_\_\_ the stranger's pocket.
- 6) When the stranger ran \_\_\_\_\_ Hugo, the little king took his chance, and ran \_\_\_\_\_ the tramps.

- 7) He ran \_\_\_\_\_ fast \_\_\_\_\_ he could, and did not stop \_\_\_\_\_ he was far \_\_\_\_\_ the village.
- 8) The king wanted to speak \_\_\_\_\_ the farmer, but he drove the king \_\_\_\_\_.
- 9) The little king hid himself \_\_\_\_\_ corner \_\_\_\_\_ the barn when he heard voices \_\_\_\_\_ him.
- 10) Two farmers went \_\_\_\_\_, and shut the door \_\_\_\_\_ them.
- 11) The rising wind was like music \_\_\_\_\_ the king.

**3 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense form.**

When Hugo (see) a stranger, he (tell) the king that he (pretend) to be sick, and the king (ask) the stranger for a penny for his sick brother. But the king (get) angry. He told the stranger that he (not to be) his brother and that Hugo (steal) money from the stranger's pocket.

The little king (walk) for a long time until he (come) to a farmhouse. But the farmer (drive) him away. He (have to) walk again. He (get) cold and tired before he (get) to another barn. The two farmers (to notice) the king, who (hide) himself in the corner of the barn. After they (finish) their work in the barn, they (leave) the barn, and (shut) the door behind them. And soon the king (fall) asleep.

**4 Put the words in the right order to make questions and answer them.**

- 1) were, the, at, what, tramps, throwing, farmer, were, family, the, his, and, eating they, while?
- 2) tramps, enter, at, points, why, the, decide, to, the, different, did, village?

- 3) said, lie, did, father, your, have, all, life, when, that, he, you, life, begged?
- 4) did, as, he, walk, fast, as, could, where, Edward?
- 5) the, risk, did, king, why, everything, enter, and?

 **Discussing the Text**

**1 Say why:**

- 1) the farmer was frightened.
- 2) Hugo was surprised at the little king's words.
- 3) Hugo pretended to be sick.
- 4) the stranger ran after Hugo.
- 5) the farmer drove the king away.
- 6) the rising wind was like music for the king.

**2 Prove that:**

- 1) the tramps did not obey the laws of the country.
- 2) Hugo knew how to steal.
- 3) the king suffered very much.

**3 Add more details to this:**

- 1) The trembling farmer was frightened very much.
- 2) The tramps decided to enter the village at different points.
- 3) The king was going to speak to the farmer.
- 4) The king heard voices behind him.

**4 Imagine that you are:**

- **Hugo.** Say what you think of the boy whom John Canty called his son.

- **The stranger.** Say how your money was stolen from your pocket.
- **Edward.** Say a) how Hugo tried to make you beg and steal; b) how you ran away and found a place where to sleep.

**5 Act out the talk between:**

- Edward and Hugo.
- Edward and the stranger.

**6 What is your opinion?**

“You are a brave boy,” said Hugo. “I like you for that.” What do you think of these words of Hugo? What do you think of Hugo?

## Chapter XVIII

### THE KING AMONG PEASANTS

In the morning he woke up because he heard children’s voices. The barn door opened and two little girls came in. They looked at him in surprise. One of them said:

“He has a nice face.”

“And very nice hair too,” said the other.

“But his clothes are terrible.”

“And how hungry he looks.”

They came nearer, and the first girl asked:

“Who are you, boy?”

“I am the king,” was his answer.

With wide-open eyes they stood silent for a minute.

“The king? What king?”

“The king of England.”

The girls looked at each other and then at him, then at each other again, and one said:

“Did you hear him, Margery? He says he is the king. Can that be true?”

“Yes, Prissy, I believe him, he is the king.”

Then they began to ask him questions. They asked him why his clothes were so bad and where he was going. He told them his story, forgetting even his hunger for the time.<sup>1</sup> But when they heard how long he had been without food, they took him away to the farm-house to give him something to eat.

The girls’ mother received the king very kindly. She allowed him to sit at the family table and eat with them. So he decided that he also must allow the woman and her daughters to sit in the presence of their king.

When breakfast was over, the woman told the king to wash up the dishes.<sup>2</sup> He thought that to wash wooden spoons was very easy. But it was not, and he did it very badly.

He did everything the woman ordered him to do very badly. He could not do anything well, and he did not want to stay with the peasant family. But it was not so easy to get away because the woman made him do one thing, then another. He was busy all the time.

<sup>1</sup> **forgetting even his hunger for the time** — на время позабыв даже о голоде

<sup>2</sup> **the woman told the king to wash up the dishes** — женщина велела королю вымыть посуду

And when after dinner the woman gave him a basket with kittens and told him to go to the river and drown them, he was going to say 'no'. But then he suddenly saw John Canty and Hugo. They were coming up to the front gates and did not see him. So he took up the basket with kittens and quietly went out through the back door, without a word.

He left the basket in the yard and hurried on along the street away from the farm-house.

## Activities

### ? *Checking Comprehension*

#### 1 Make the right choice.

- 1) The door of the barn opened and
  - a) a little girl came in
  - b) two little girls came in
  - c) a woman came in
- 2) The little girls were
  - a) surprised to see a boy in the barn
  - b) afraid to see a boy in the barn
  - c) glad to see a boy in the barn
- 3) They asked the king
  - a) why he was in the barn
  - b) why he was so dirty
  - c) why his clothes were so bad
- 4) The girls' mother told the king
  - a) to wash up the dishes

- b) to lay the table
- c) to clean the table

- 5) The king took up the basket
  - a) and went to the front gates
  - b) and went out through the back door
  - c) and left the house

#### 2 Say whether the statement is true or false. Correct the false one.

- 1) Two little girls woke up the king.
- 2) The little girls were happy to see a real king.
- 3) When they heard how hungry he was they brought him some food.
- 4) The king allowed the woman and her children to sit in his presence.
- 5) The woman made the king do a lot of work about the house.
- 6) The king did everything well.
- 7) The woman asked the king to go to the river and wash the kittens there.
- 8) John Canty saw the king and ran after him.

#### 3 Put the sentences in the right order.

- 1) The girls' mother was very kind to the king.
- 2) The king hurried away from the farmhouse.
- 3) When the king woke up he heard children's voices.
- 4) The king told them his story.
- 5) He did not want to stay with the peasant family.
- 6) She gave him a basket with kittens.

- 7) The girls took him to the farm-house to give him some food.

**4 Answer the following questions.**

- 1) Who came into the barn?
- 2) What did the little girls notice about the king?
- 3) The girls did not believe that the boy was the king, did they?
- 4) What questions did the girls ask the king?
- 5) How did the girls' mother receive the king?
- 6) What did the girls' mother make the king do about the house?
- 7) How did the king do the housework?
- 8) Where did the woman send the king after dinner?
- 9) Who did the king see coming to the gates of the house?
- 10) Where did the king leave the basket with kittens?

 **Working with Vocabulary and Grammar**

**1 Say what the italicized words mean.**

- 1) The girls' mother *received* the king very *kindly*.
- 2) It was not *easy* to wash *wooden spoons*.
- 3) The woman gave him *a basket with kittens* and told him *to drown* them.
- 4) The king did not want to stay with the *peasant* family.

**2 Complete the sentences with a suitable adverb from the box.**

quietly kindly badly well
------------------------------------

- 1) The girls' mother received the king \_\_\_\_\_ .
- 2) The king did the work the woman had ordered him to do very \_\_\_\_\_ .
- 3) The king took up the basket and left the house \_\_\_\_\_ .
- 4) The king could not do anything \_\_\_\_\_ .

**3 Fill in the missing prepositions.**

- 1) The little girls looked \_\_\_\_\_ the king \_\_\_\_\_ surprise.
- 2) \_\_\_\_\_ wide-open eyes the girls stood silent \_\_\_\_\_ a moment.
- 3) The woman and her children could sit \_\_\_\_\_ the presence \_\_\_\_\_ the king.
- 4) The girls' mother allowed the king to sit \_\_\_\_\_ the family table, and eat \_\_\_\_\_ them.
- 5) The king took \_\_\_\_\_ the basket \_\_\_\_\_ kittens, and went \_\_\_\_\_ the back door, \_\_\_\_\_ a word.

**4 Complete the sentences.**

- 1) In the morning the little king woke up because \_\_\_\_\_

- 2) The girls stood with wide-open eyes because \_\_\_\_\_
- 3) The girls asked the king many questions because \_\_\_\_\_
- 4) The girls brought the king to the farm-house because \_\_\_\_\_
- 5) The king did not want to stay with the peasant family because \_\_\_\_\_
- 6) It was not so easy to get away from the farm-house because \_\_\_\_\_

### *Discussing the Text*

#### 1 Say why:

- 1) the two little girls were surprised.
- 2) they believed that the boy was the king.
- 3) the girls asked the king many questions.
- 4) they took him to the farm-house.
- 5) the girls' mother gave the king a lot of work to do.
- 6) the king could not do any work well.
- 7) the king wanted to get away from the farm-house.
- 8) the king did not want to stay with the peasant family.

#### 2 Prove that:

- 1) the little girls were good- hearted.
- 2) their mother was kind to the king.
- 3) the king never did any housework.
- 4) it was not easy to run away from John Canty.

#### 3 Add more details to this:

- 1) The girls began to ask him questions.
- 2) The king thought it was easy to wash wooden spoons.
- 3) It was not easy to get away from the farm-house.

#### 4 Imagine that you are:

- **One of the girls.** Say what the boy looked like.
- **The girls' mother.** Say what you thought of the boy.
- **Edward.** Say what you thought of the girls and their mother.

#### 5 Act out the talk between:

- The two girls.
- Edward and the girls.

#### 6 What is your opinion?

The girls' mother asked the king to drown the kittens. What do you think of this?





## Chapter XIX THE PRINCE AND THE HERMIT

He never looked back<sup>1</sup> until he came to the forest. Then he turned and saw two figures far away from him. He hurried on.<sup>2</sup> After a long walk he stopped to have a rest. At first he was going to stay the whole day where he was. But as it was cold he decided to go straight through the forest in the hope to find some road. He went on and on and soon he saw that the night was coming on. He became frightened and the fear made him hurry faster.

<sup>1</sup> He never looked back — Он ни разу не оглянулся

<sup>2</sup> He hurried on. — Он поспешил дальше.

And how glad he was when he saw some faint light not far away! He started towards that light which came from a window of a little hut. He came up to that window and looked through it. The room was small; in a corner was a poor bed and ragged blankets on it. Near it was a short bench and a chair. On the bench there were some dishes. There was no table in the hut, but in the middle of the room there was a big wooden box with an open book on it.

An old man was standing on his knees and praying. He was big and thin. His long hair was as white as snow.<sup>1</sup>

“A holy hermit!” said the king to himself. “All will be well now!”

The hermit rose from his knees; the king knocked at the door. A voice answered: “Enter!”

The king entered and stopped. The hermit looked at him and said:

“Who are you?”

“I am the king,” came the answer.

“Welcome, king,” cried the hermit. “Welcome, welcome! A king who throws his crown away and wears rags, a king who wants to spend his days in peace — he is welcome! He may stay here till his death comes...”

The king tried to stop him and explain everything, but the hermit paid no attention to him — he did not even hear him. He went on and on with his talk, and raised and raised his voice:

“Yes, you will be at peace here, you will pray and whip your body every day, you will eat bread and drink

<sup>1</sup> as white as snow — белые как снег

water only. You will wear a hair shirt on your body,<sup>1</sup> and you will be at peace. Nobody will find you here, nobody will trouble you.”

The king began to tell him his story, but the hermit went on speaking and walking up and down the floor. Then he came up to the king and whispered:

“Sh! I will tell you a secret!”

After a moment or two he went to the window, put his head out and looked around. Then he came back again, put his face close to the king’s and whispered:

“I am an archangel!”<sup>2</sup>

The king became frightened. He thought:

“Why did I not stay with the tramps? To stay with them was much better than to be the prisoner of a madman.” The hermit continued:

“I was made an archangel five years ago by angels<sup>3</sup> who were sent to me here to tell me this great news. They dropped upon their knees to me. To me, king, because I was greater than they!”

He stopped for a moment and then went on with his mad speech:

“Yes. I am an archangel. *Only an archangel!* Twenty years ago a voice said to me in a dream: ‘You will be pope.’<sup>4</sup> At that time I was a monk.<sup>5</sup> But the king put an

---

<sup>1</sup> You will wear a hair shirt on your body — На голом теле ты будешь носить власяницу (*Власяница* — грубая волосяная одежда монаха или отшельника)

<sup>2</sup> archangel [ˈɑ:k,eɪndʒəl] — архангел (в христианской мифологии — высший ангел)

<sup>3</sup> angel [ˈeɪndʒəl] — ангел

<sup>4</sup> pope [pəʊp] — папа римский

<sup>5</sup> monk [mɒŋk] — монах

end to our life at the monastery<sup>1</sup> and drove us away. That is why I am not pope, but only an archangel.”

So he went on for an hour, while the poor little king sat and suffered.

Then the old man stopped speaking and gave the king some food to eat. After their supper the hermit put the boy to bed. Edward felt happy to lie down, he was terribly tired. The old man left him and sat down by the fire.

Suddenly he got up and went up to the king. He said:

“So you are the king, are you not?”

“Yes,” said the boy who was half asleep already”

“What king?”

“Of England.”

“Of England? Then Henry is dead?”

“Alas, it is so. I am his son.”

“Do you know that it was your father who turned us out of our monastery and made us houseless and homeless?”<sup>2</sup>

There was no answer. The boy was asleep.

“He sleeps, so — his heart is happy,” the hermit said and turned away.

---

<sup>1</sup> monastery [ˈmɒnəstəri] — монастырь

<sup>2</sup> Do you know that it was your father who turned us out of our monastery and made us houseless and homeless? — Знаешь ли ты о том, что не кто иной, как твой отец, выгнал нас из нашего монастыря и сделал нас бездомными и бесприютными? (*Во время правления Генриха VIII в Англии были закрыты все монастыри, а их имущество и земли конфискованы королем.*)

The old man began walking around the hut.<sup>1</sup> He was looking for something. He found it at last. It was a big old knife. He sat down at the fire and began to look at the knife.

He was looking at the knife and talking aloud at the same time.

“It was his father that did it all,”<sup>2</sup> he said. “He had turned us out and made us homeless. And I am not pope, but only an archangel because of<sup>3</sup> Henry the Eighth.”

The hermit came to the sleeping boy. He raised his hand with the knife in it. Then he thought:

“It is long past midnight. I don’t want him to cry out. Somebody may pass and hear him. It will be bad for me, very bad!”

He found some rags and came up to the sleeping king with them. Very carefully and slowly he tied his legs together, then he tied his hands. And then carefully and slowly the ‘archangel’ covered the boy’s mouth with another rag and tied it over his head.

## Activities

### ? *Checking Comprehension*

#### I **Make the right choice.**

1) He went straight through the forest in the hope

<sup>1</sup> around the hut — по хижине

<sup>2</sup> It was his father that did it all — Отец его всему причина

<sup>3</sup> because of — из-за

a) to find some house

b) to find some road

c) to see some people

2) He came up to the window and

a) opened it

b) knocked at it

c) looked through it

3) In the middle of the room there was a big wooden box

a) with an open book on it

b) with dirty dishes on it

c) with some rags on it

4) An old man was standing on his knees and

a) reading a book

b) praying

c) crying

5) The king tried to tell him his story but the old man

a) paid no attention to him

b) went on reading the book

c) went on praying

6) The old man gave the king some food, then he put him to bed and

a) left the hut

b) sat by the fire

c) went to another bed

7) The old man came up to the sleeping boy with

a) a stick in his hand

b) an axe in his hand

c) a knife in his hand

**2 Say whether the statement is true or false. Correct the false one.**

- 1) The king wanted to stay in the forest the whole day.
- 2) Soon the king saw an old man walking around his hut.
- 3) The hermit was glad to see the King of England.
- 4) The king was happy to find himself in the company of the hermit.
- 5) The hermit laid the table for two and they had a nice supper.
- 6) The king was sorry for what his father had done with the monks.
- 7) The hermit wanted to kill the king, but he was afraid to do that.

**3 Put the sentences in the right order.**

- 1) The hut looked very poor.
- 2) "A king who wants to spend his days in peace is welcome here," said the hermit.
- 3) The king walked through the forest hoping to find some road.
- 4) The hermit went on walking and talking to himself.
- 5) Suddenly he saw a faint light in the forest, and he started towards that light.
- 6) The king tried to tell the hermit his story.
- 7) "Your father drove us away from the monastery and made us houseless and homeless."
- 8) The hermit gave the king some food, and put him to bed.

9) The hermit found a big old knife, and came up to the sleeping king.

**4 Answer the following questions.**

- 1) Where did the king come to after a long walk through the forest?
- 2) What was the man who the king saw through the window like?
- 3) What did his room look like?
- 4) What was the old man doing when the king saw him through the window?
- 5) The hermit was glad to welcome the king, wasn't he?
- 6) What was the hermit talking about when the king wanted to tell him his story?
- 7) What was the hermit's story?
- 8) What did the hermit do when he stopped talking?
- 9) Did the king hear the whole story about his father?
- 10) What did the hermit do to the king?

### **Working with Vocabulary and Grammar**

**1 Say what the italicized words mean.**

- 1) "Henry the Eighth *put an end* to our life at the monastery."
- 2) He found a big old *knife*.
- 3) *It's long past midnight*. I don't want him *to cry out*.
- 4) The king saw two *figures* far away from him.

- 5) The king went *straight through* the forest hoping to find *a road*.
- 6) *The fear* made him go faster.
- 7) The king *started towards* that *faint* light.
- 8) He *looked through* the window and saw *a bench* with some *dishes* on it.
- 9) "*A holy hermit*," said the king to himself. "*All will be well* now."
- 10) An old man was standing on his knees and *praying*.

**2 Complete the following sentences choosing the right verb using the correct tense form.**

**Don't confuse the verbs:**

rise — rose — risen — rising (= get higher)

raise — raised — raised — raising (= move something up)

lie — lied — lied — lying (= say things that are not true)

lie — lay — lain — lying (= be flat, to be down)

lay — laid — laid — laying (= put plates, knives, etc on the table)

- 1) The hermit (rise, raise) from his knees to welcome the king.
- 2) The wind (rise, raise), and it was getting colder.
- 3) He (rise, raise) his voice, and frightened the king.
- 4) The old man (rise, raise) himself a little higher, and began to talk.
- 5) The sun (rise, raise), and a new day began.
- 6) He (rise, raise) his hand to protect himself from the blows.

- 7) The king (lie, lay) on the floor, and soon he fell asleep.
- 8) Hugo (lie, lay) to Edward when he said that Hendon (lie, lay) wounded in the woods.
- 9) The girls' mother (lay, lie) the table for breakfast.

**3 Fill in the missing prepositions.**

The king went \_\_\_\_ the forest faster and faster \_\_\_\_ the hope to find a road. The night was coming \_\_\_\_ . \_\_\_\_ a long walk he saw a faint light not far \_\_\_\_ . He hurried \_\_\_\_ the light. Soon the king saw a little hut \_\_\_\_ a window \_\_\_\_ which that light came. He looked \_\_\_\_ the window and saw a small room \_\_\_\_ a poor bed, and a bench, and a chair. \_\_\_\_ the bed there were some ragged blankets, and \_\_\_\_ the bench some dishes. There was a big wooden box \_\_\_\_ the middle \_\_\_\_ the room, and \_\_\_\_ it there was an open book. An old man was standing \_\_\_\_ his knees, praying. He rose \_\_\_\_ his knees when the king knocked \_\_\_\_ the door. The king tried to tell his story \_\_\_\_ the man, but he did not pay attention \_\_\_\_ the king, and went \_\_\_\_ talking and walking \_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_ the floor. When the old man finished his mad speech, he gave some food \_\_\_\_ the king, and then put him \_\_\_\_ bed.

**4 Report the sentences in indirect speech.**

"So you are the king," said the hermit. "Yes," said the boy. "What king," asked the hermit." Of Eng-

land,” answered the boy. “Of England? Then Henry is dead,” went on the hermit. “Alas, it is so. I am his son,” said the king sadly. “Do you know that it was your father who made us homeless?” asked the hermit.

### *Discussing the Text*

#### 1 Say why:

- 1) the king decided to go straight through the forest.
- 2) he was glad to see some faint light in the forest.
- 3) the hermit paid no attention to the king.
- 4) the king became frightened when the hermit whispered something to him.
- 5) the king thought that the hermit was mad.
- 6) Edward felt happy when he lay in bed.
- 7) the hermit tied up the king.
- 8) the hermit had a knife in his hand when he came up to the sleeping king.

#### 2 Prove that:

- 1) the hermit was very poor.
- 2) the hermit led an unusual life.
- 3) the hermit had excuses (оправдания) not to like Henry the Eighth.
- 4) the hermit was cruel to the little king.

#### 3 Add more details to the following:

- 1) The room was small.

- 2) “Welcome, king,” cried the hermit.
- 3) “I was made an archangel five years ago.”
- 4) The hermit found some rags.

#### 4 Imagine that you are:

- **Edward.** Say a) how you came to the hermit’s hut; b) what you thought of the hermit; c) what you learned from the hermit.
- **The hermit.** Say a) why you became a hermit; b) why you wanted to kill the king.

#### 5 Act out the talk between:

- Edward and the hermit (when they met).
- Edward and the hermit (after supper).

#### 6 What is your opinion?

Do you think the hermit was mad? Give reasons for your answer.

## Chapter XX

### HENDON LOOKS FOR HIS FRIEND

Edward opened his eyes. He saw the old man who was holding a knife in his hand. He got pale from fear.

“Son of Henry the Eighth, have you prayed?”

Poor Edward tried to free himself, but he was helpless.

“Your end has come,” said the hermit, “pray before you die.”

Tears ran down the king's cheeks, but the cruel old man did not pay any attention to that.

"The night is already gone,"<sup>1</sup> said the hermit. "I must hurry. Close your eyes if you are afraid to look upon..."

The old man stopped speaking and fell upon his knees, his knife in his hand over the frightened boy.

But what was that? There was a sound of voices near the hut. The knife dropped from the hermit's hand. He threw a sheepskin<sup>2</sup> over the boy and got up from his knees. There was a loud knock at the hut's door.

"Hullo! Open the door! And hurry up in the name of all the devils."<sup>3</sup>

This bad language<sup>4</sup> sounded like music in the king's ears because it was Miles Hendon's voice!

"Good morning, sir! Where is the boy, my boy?"

"What boy, friend?"

"What boy! Tell me no lies, sir priest, and no false stories!<sup>5</sup> Near to this place I met two tramps who had stolen him from me. I made them tell me the truth. They said they had seen him at your door. Take care, holy sir,<sup>6</sup> you will be sorry if you hide him from me. Where is the boy?"

---

<sup>1</sup> **The night is already gone** — Ночь уже прошла

<sup>2</sup> **a sheepskin** — овечья шкура

<sup>3</sup> **in the name of all the devils** — во имя всех чертей на свете

<sup>4</sup> **This bad language** — Эта брань

<sup>5</sup> **Tell me no lies, sir priest, and no false [fɔ:ls] stories** — Никакого вранья, господин священник, и никаких лживых сказок

<sup>6</sup> **Take care, holy sir** — Берегись, святой отец

"Oh, good sir, perhaps you mean the ragged boy that spent here the night? If you take interest in such lads as he, then I can tell you that I sent him on some business and he will come back soon."

"How soon? How soon? Hurry up and tell me when you think he will be back! How soon will he be back?"

"I tell you, he will be back soon."

"Very well then. I will try to wait. But stop! You say that *you* sent him on some business? *You*? That is a lie! He would never go for you or for any other man!"<sup>1</sup>

"For any *man* — no, perhaps not, you are right, I think. But I am not a man."

"*What*?" Miles Hendon cried out. "Not a man? Who are you then?"

"This is a secret, do not tell anybody about it. I am an archangel."

Miles Hendon opened his mouth in surprise. Then he said:

"This explains everything, of course! Even a king must obey when an archangel gives the word of command! Let me... sh! What noise was that?"

All this time the king was trying to moan as loudly as he could. He wanted Hendon to hear his moans. But they did not reach Hendon's ears. When he heard these last words of his true servant, they brought him some hope and he moaned again, and he tried hard to moan loudly.

"Noise?" said the hermit. "I heard only the wind."

---

<sup>1</sup> **He would [wʊd] never go for you or for any other man** — Он ни за что не пошел бы ни для тебя, ни для кого-либо другого!

“Perhaps you are right,” said Hendon. “It is the wind. Oh... there it is again! It is not the wind! Come, let us go out and see what it is!”

“Very well,” said the hermit, “let us go out, I shall lead the way!”<sup>1</sup>

“And I shall not wait any longer,” Miles Hendon said. “I *cannot* wait longer. I think he has lost his way<sup>2</sup> in this forest. Which way did he go? Quick, point it out to me!”

“He went...” the hermit began. “But wait, I shall go with you.”

“Good, good!” said Hendon. “You are better than you look. You can ride the donkey which I have brought for my boy. Let’s hurry!”

They went out. All hope left the poor boy now.

“When the hermit comes back,” he said to himself, “my end will come!”

He tried to get free again so hard that he threw off the sheepskin that covered him.

Then he heard that somebody opened the door. Horror made him close his eyes;<sup>3</sup> horror made him open them again.

And... before him stood John Canty and Hugo!

He wanted to say: “Thank god!”<sup>4</sup> but his mouth was tied with a rag and he could not say a word.

---

<sup>1</sup> **I shall lead the way** — я провожу тебя

<sup>2</sup> **I think he has lost his way** — Я думаю, что он заблудился

<sup>3</sup> **Horror made him close his eyes** — От страха он закрыл глаза

<sup>4</sup> **Thank god!** — Слава богу!

A moment or two later his legs and arms were untied and John Canty and Hugo were holding him by his arms and hurrying him through the forest.

## Activities

### ? *Checking Comprehension*

#### 1 **Make the right choice.**

- 1) When the hermit heard a sound of voice near the hut he
  - a) hurried to the door
  - b) threw a sheepskin over the king
  - c) hid the king in the corner
- 2) The old man said that
  - a) the boy had run away
  - b) he had not seen any boy
  - c) he had sent the boy on some business
- 3) Miles Hendon knew where the king was from
  - a) Hugo and John Canty
  - b) the tramps
  - c) a farmer
- 4) The old man said to Miles Hendon that he was
  - a) an angel
  - b) an archangel
  - c) a monk
- 5) Miles Hendon could not hear the king’s moans because



- a) he was covered with a sheepskin
- b) his mouth was tied with a rag
- c) he was too far from him

- 6) John Canty and Hugo hurried the king through the forest
- a) pulling him by the rags
  - b) holding him by the hands
  - c) holding him by the arms

**2 Say whether the statement is true or false. Correct the false one.**

- 1) When Edward saw a knife over his head he began crying.
- 2) When the old man heard voices near the hut he got frightened.
- 3) The old man said to Miles Hendon that the boy had spent the night with him, and then had gone.
- 4) Miles Hendon did not believe any word of the old man.
- 5) The king hoped that Miles Hendon would save him from that mad old man.
- 6) Miles Hendon left the hut to look for the king.
- 7) When Miles Hendon left, the king got free.
- 8) He was glad to see John Canty and Hugo.

**3 Put the sentences in the right order.**

- 1) The old man held a knife over the king's head.
- 2) The king heard the voice of Miles Hendon.
- 3) The king was trying to moan as loudly as he could.

- 4) The old man said that he had sent the boy on some business.
- 5) There was a loud knock at the door.
- 6) The old man went out with Miles Hendon.
- 7) Miles Hendon opened his mouth in surprise.
- 8) Some moments later his arms and legs were untied.

**4 Answer the following questions.**

- 1) What did the hermit say when he was holding a knife over the king?
- 2) What made the old man throw a sheepskin over the king?
- 3) How did Miles Hendon know that the king had been at the hut?
- 4) What made Miles Hendon open his mouth in surprise?
- 5) What did the king want Miles Hendon to hear?
- 6) Where did Miles Hendon and the old man go to?
- 7) Who came into the hut after Hendon and the old man had left?

** Working with Vocabulary and Grammar**

**1 Say what the italicized words mean.**

- 1) The king *got pale* when he saw a knife over his head.
- 2) Tears ran down the king's *cheeks*.
- 3) This bad language *sounded like music* in the king's *ears*.

- 4) "I made them *tell me the truth.*"
- 5) If you *take interest* in such lads as he, I can tell you that I sent him *on some business.*
- 6) "Even a king must *obey* when an archangel gives *the word of command.*"
- 7) The king tried *to moan* as loudly as he could, but his *moans* did not *reach* Hendon's ears.
- 8) The king tried *to get free* so hard that he *threw off* the sheepskin that *covered* him.
- 9) "Which way did he go? *Point it out* to me!"

**2 Fill in the missing prepositions.**

The old man was holding a knife \_\_\_\_\_ the frightened king when he heard voices \_\_\_\_\_ his hut. He quickly threw a sheepskin \_\_\_\_\_ the king, got \_\_\_\_\_ his knees, and hurried \_\_\_\_\_ the door. Miles Hendon was \_\_\_\_\_ the door. The old man explained \_\_\_\_\_ him that he had sent a ragged boy \_\_\_\_\_ some business, and he would come \_\_\_\_\_ soon. When Miles Hendon heard some noise, he made the old man go \_\_\_\_\_ him to see what it was. The king managed to throw \_\_\_\_\_ the sheepskin that covered him. But his mouth was tied \_\_\_\_\_ a rag. When John Canty and Hugo found the king, they hurried \_\_\_\_\_ the forest, holding the king \_\_\_\_\_ his arms.

**3 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense form.**

- 1) Miles Hendon told the old man that he (be sorry) if he (hide) the boy from him, Hendon.
- 2) When the old man said that he (be) an archangel, Hendon (open) his mouth in surprise.

- 3) The king (try) to moan as loudly as he could, but his moans (not to reach) Hendon's ears.
- 4) Miles Hendon (think) that the king (lose) his way, and asked the old man which way the boy (go).
- 5) All hope (leave) the poor boy after Miles Hendon (leave) the hut.

**4 Match the words then use them to describe the events from the story.**

- |              |                   |
|--------------|-------------------|
| 1) to get    | a) attention      |
| 2) to get    | b) free           |
| 3) to tell   | c) before one die |
| 4) to tell   | d) pale           |
| 5) to pray   | e) a lie          |
| 6) to pay    | f) the truth      |
| 7) to sound  | g) interest       |
| 8) to take   | h) on business    |
| 9) to send   | i) a donkey       |
| 10) to reach | j) one's way      |
| 11) to lose  | k) like music     |
| 12) to ride  | l) one's ears     |

 **• Discussing the Text**

**1 Say why:**

- 1) Edward got pale.
- 2) the knife dropped from the old man's hand.
- 3) Miles Hendon's voice sounded like music in the king's ears.
- 4) Miles Hendon opened his mouth in surprise.

- 5) the king tried to moan loudly.
- 6) the king could not say a word, when he saw John Canty and Hugo.

**2 Prove that:**

- 1) Edward was helpless.
- 2) the hermit was cruel.
- 3) Miles Hendon was a true friend.
- 4) it was not easy to run away from John Canty.

**3 Imagine that you are:**

- **Edward.** Say what you heard when you were tied and covered with a rag.
- **The hermit.** Say why you could not kill the boy.
- **Miles Hendon.** Say how you were looking for the king.

**4 Act out the talk between:**

Miles Hendon and the hermit.

**5 What is your opinion?**

Do you think the old man was mad or clever? Explain your choice.



## Chapter XXI HENDON SAVES THE KING AGAIN

So John Canty brought the king back to the band. Edward suffered from their tramping life very much. The tramps tried to make him useful for them, they wanted him to steal and beg. But they could not make him obey them. He neither stole nor begged. Not only that: he tried to run away all the time.

At night, in his dreams he forgot his hard life and he was on the throne again. But in the morning Hugo was his master. Hugo hated Edward more and more. He

was thinking of a plan to bring Edward into trouble<sup>1</sup> and make him suffer for his pride.

One day the boys were walking up and down the street of a small village. The king was thinking about his hard life and planning how to run away. Hugo was making plans how to put some crime upon Edward.<sup>2</sup>

Hugo's chance came at last.

A woman appeared in the street. She was carrying a large package in a basket. Hugo waited and watched till the woman had passed by. Then he said in a low voice: "Wait for me here, I shall come back soon."

The king obeyed. He thought: "When Hugo goes far enough, I shall run away."

But it was not so simple. Hugo went behind the woman. He snatched<sup>3</sup> the package from her, ran back to the prince and threw it in his hands. Then he started running with a cry: "Stop thief!"<sup>4</sup>

The next moment Hugo turned a corner and the woman ran up to the king with a crowd behind her. She caught the king and shouted:

"He's the thief, who stole my package!"

The boy cried as he tried to free himself:

"Leave me alone, you, foolish woman. I have not stolen your package!"

---

<sup>1</sup> to bring Edward into trouble — навлечь на Эдуарда беду

<sup>2</sup> to put some crime upon Edward — подвести Эдуарда под какое-либо преступление

<sup>3</sup> snatched — схватил

<sup>4</sup> Stop thief [θi:f]! — Держи вора!

A workman from the crowd came up to the king and said, "I shall give him a good beating for a lesson."<sup>1</sup>

But suddenly another man said in a quiet voice:

"Leave the boy alone, good people. The law will decide what to do with him, not you."

The people saw a brave soldier. The woman let go off the boy's hand.<sup>2</sup> Everybody was silent.

The king ran up to the soldier with shining eyes and cried out:

"You have come in good time,<sup>3</sup> Sir Miles."

## Activities

### ? *Checking Comprehension*

#### 1 **Make the right choice.**

- 1) The tramps wanted Edward to
  - a) work for them
  - b) beg and steal for them
  - c) kill for them
- 2) Hugo was making plans to
  - a) make Edward his servant
  - b) run with Edward
  - c) bring Edward into trouble

---

<sup>1</sup> I shall give him a good beating for a lesson. — Я проучу его хорошей поркой.

<sup>2</sup> The woman let go off the boy's hand. — Женщина выпустила руку мальчика.

<sup>3</sup> You have come in good time — Ты пришел вовремя

- 3) A woman was carrying a package in
  - a) a bucket
  - b) a basket
  - c) a bag
- 4) The woman ran up to the king with
  - a) a crowd behind her
  - b) a policeman behind her
  - c) Hugo behind her
- 5) A workman from the crowd came up to the king and said:
  - a) "I shall take him to the police"
  - b) "I shall give him a good beating for a lesson."
  - c) "I shall pay for this package"

**2 Say whether the statement is true or false. Correct the false one.**

- 1) The tramps made Edward beg, but they could not make him steal.
- 2) Hugo did not like Edward.
- 3) Edward was making plans how to run away from the tramps.
- 4) A woman was carrying something in a bucket.
- 5) Hugo stole a package from the woman and ran away.
- 6) A workman saved Edward from the crowd.
- 7) Edward saw a soldier in the crowd and ran up to him.

**3 Put the sentences in the right order.**

- 1) Once Edward and Hugo were in a small village.

- 2) They wanted to make Edward to beg and steal.
- 3) Edward wanted to run away from the tramps again.
- 4) Hugo threw the package in his hands.
- 5) Edward was thinking how to run away.
- 6) Only in his dreams he was happy.
- 7) But Hugo looked after him.
- 8) Hugo saw a woman carrying a package in a basket.
- 9) And the chance came.
- 10) Hugo went behind to the woman.
- 11) Then he ran away crying: "Stop thief!"
- 12) "You have come in good time."
- 13) Hugo ran back to Edward.
- 14) Hugo snatched her package.
- 15) It was Miles Hendon.
- 16) He told Edward to wait for him.
- 17) But Hugo was making plans how to bring Edward into trouble.
- 18) Edward suffered very much.

**4 Answer the following questions.**

- 1) What kind of life did Edward have to lead with the tramps?
- 2) What did the tramps want Edward to do?
- 3) What were Edward's dreams?
- 4) How was Hugo planning to make Edward suffer for his pride?
- 5) In what way did Hugo realize (осуществлять) his plan?
- 6) Who saved the king? How?

 **Working with Vocabulary and Grammar**

**1 Say what the italicized words mean.**

- 1) Edward suffered from their *tramping life* very much.
- 2) The tramps could not make Edward *obey* them.
- 3) Hugo *hated* Edward and wanted to make him suffer for his *pride*.
- 4) A woman was carrying a large *package in a basket*.
- 5) Edward ran up to the soldier with *shining* eyes.

**2 Put the following words into the correct columns.**

city	house	people	nature

street, gates, wind, snow, crowd, comrade, messenger, cabinet, tower, inn, bridge, hall, rain, soldier, page, enemy, prisoner, witch, field, center, door, invalid, pauper, apartment, washstand, river, prison, prince, priest, palace, thief, guard, tramp, speaker, hairdresser, lad, hermit, slave, square, win-

dow, farmer, gentleman, pope, monk, mirror, room, stranger, king, kitchen, servant, palace, floor, drunk, bed, corner, corridor, secretary, wall, youth, sofa, stairs, sand, leader, armchair, beggar, friend, bookcase, road, school, house, church, table, prison, wood, air, bench, storm, forest, master, fire, madman, water, throne

**3 Make up sentences using the words in columns.**

Hugo			to beg and steal
Edward		Edward	to get into trouble
Miles Hendon		Hugo	to suffer for his pride
The woman	wanted	Miles Hendon	to run away
The crowd	did not want	the woman	to look after Edward
The tramps		the tramps	to get free from the tramps
A workman			to be in danger
			to have a good beating
			to leave the boy alone
			to leave him alone

**4 Fill in the missing prepositions.**

When a woman appeared \_\_\_\_\_ the street \_\_\_\_\_ a basket \_\_\_\_\_ her hand, Hugo told the king to wait \_\_\_\_\_ him there, and went \_\_\_\_\_ the woman. Then he snatched her package, ran \_\_\_\_\_ the king,

threw the package \_\_\_\_\_ his hands and ran \_\_\_\_\_ crying: "Stop thief!" It was Miles Hendon who saved the king again \_\_\_\_\_ the angry crowd. He appeared \_\_\_\_\_ good time.

### *Discussing the Text*

#### 1 Say why:

- 1) Edward suffered.
- 2) Hugo wanted to bring Edward into trouble.
- 3) Hugo cried: "Stop thief!"
- 4) the woman let go off the king's hand.
- 5) the king's eyes were shining when he saw Miles Hendon.

#### 2 Prove that:

- 1) Edward was an honest boy.
- 2) Hugo hated Edward.
- 3) Hugo was wicked.

#### 3 Add more details to the following:

- 1) The tramps wanted to make Edward useful for them.
- 2) Hugo went behind the woman.
- 3) The people saw a brave soldier.

#### 4 Imagine that you are:

- **Edward.** Say a) how you suffered; b) how Hugo brought you into trouble.

- **Hugo.** Say a) why you hated Edward; b) how you made Edward suffer.
- **The woman.** Say what happened to you in the street.
- **Miles Hendon.** Say how you saved the king.

#### 5 Act out the talk between:

Hugo, Edward, the woman, a workman, and Miles Hendon.

#### 6 What is your opinion?

"The law will decide what to do with him, not you," said Miles Hendon.

Do you agree with him? Why? Why not?

## Chapter XXII

### THE PRINCE — A PRISONER

Suddenly a police officer pushed his way through the crowd<sup>1</sup> and was going to lay his hand on the king's shoulder, when Hendon said:

"Do not touch him, good friend. He will go quietly himself. Lead on,<sup>2</sup> we shall follow."

The officer and the woman with her package led on, Miles and the king with the crowd followed them.

---

<sup>1</sup> a police officer pushed his way through the crowd — через толпу пробрался полицейский

<sup>2</sup> Lead on — Идите вперед

When they came to the judge, the woman said that the boy had stolen her package, in which there was a little pig.

“The pig cost me three shillings and eightpence,”<sup>1</sup> the woman said.

The judge looked at the woman and said kindly:

“Do you not know, good woman, that when somebody steals a thing that costs more than thirteen pence, the law says he must be hanged for it?”<sup>2</sup>

The woman cried in great fear:

“Oh, what have I done! The poor boy must be hanged! I do not want that! What shall I do? What can I do?”

The judge simply said:

“You can change the cost of the pig, as it is not yet written down.”<sup>3</sup>

“Then let the cost of the pig be eightpence,”<sup>4</sup> cried the woman.

Miles Hendon was so happy that to the king’s surprise he threw his arms round the boy<sup>5</sup> and kissed him.

The woman started away with her pig; the police officer opened the door for her and followed her out into the hall.

---

<sup>1</sup> **The pig cost me three shillings and eightpence** — Поросенок стоил три шиллинга и восемь пенсов (*Шиллинг — английская денежная единица, ныне упраздненная, равнявшаяся 1/20 фунта стерлингов.*)

<sup>2</sup> **he must be hanged for it** — он должен быть повешен за это

<sup>3</sup> **as it is not yet written down** — так как она еще не записана

<sup>4</sup> **Then let the cost of the pig be eightpence** — В таком случае пусть стоимость поросенка будет восемь пенсов

<sup>5</sup> **he threw his arms round the boy** — он обнял мальчика

Hendon wanted to know why the officer followed the woman; so he went softly into the dark hall and listened. He heard the following talk:

“It is a good pig; I shall buy it; here is the eightpence.”

“Eightpence! It cost me three shillings and eightpence.”

“Then you told a lie. You said the pig’s cost was eightpence. Come back with me before the judge and answer for your lie, and then the lad will be hanged.”<sup>1</sup>

“Oh, good man, say nothing more! Give me the eightpence and let us forget the matter.”

The woman went away crying. Hendon came back into the judge’s room. The judge said some kind words to the king and sentenced him to a short term in prison.<sup>2</sup>

The king was very much surprised. He opened his mouth and was going to give the order to hang the good judge. But Hendon took him by the hand and they quietly followed the police officer to the prison.

## Activities

### ? *Checking Comprehension*

#### 1 Who said the following:

1) “Don’t touch him, good friend.”

---

<sup>1</sup> **and then the lad will be hanged** — и тогда мальчика повесят

<sup>2</sup> **and sentenced him to a short term in prison** — и приговорил его к кратковременному заключению в тюрьме



- 2) "Oh, what have I done! The poor boy must be hanged!"
- 3) "You can change the cost of the pig."
- 4) "It's a good pig. I shall buy it."
- 5) "Come back with me before the judge, and answer for your lie."
- 6) "Let us forget the matter."

**2 Say who:**

- 1) led the king to the judge.
- 2) cried in great fear.
- 3) kissed the king.
- 4) went into the hall.
- 5) heard the talk.
- 6) bought the pig.
- 7) sold the pig.
- 8) said some kind words to the king.
- 9) was going to give the order to hang the judge.
- 10) followed the police officer to the prison.

**3 Say whether the statement is true or false. Correct the false one.**

- 1) The police officer brought the king to the judge.
- 2) The woman said to the judge that the boy had stolen her little pig.
- 3) The woman did not want the boy to be hanged.
- 4) The woman did not want to change the cost of the pig.
- 5) The police officer bought the pig for three shillings and eightpence.
- 6) The judge was kind and let the king go.

**4 Answer the following questions.**

- 1) Where did the king and Miles Hendon follow the police officer to?
- 2) What did the woman say to the judge?
- 3) The woman did not want the king to be hanged, did she?
- 4) What did the judge say the woman could do with the cost of the pig?
- 5) What did the police officer want the woman to do with the pig?
- 6) Did the judge sentence the king to a short or a long term in prison?

 **Working with Vocabulary and Grammar**

**1 Say what the italicized words mean.**

- 1) "Don't *touch* him, good friend. He will go *quietly* himself."
- 2) The woman said to the *judge* that the boy had stolen her pig.
- 3) The woman *started away* with her pig.
- 4) "Give me the eightpence and let us forget *the matter*," said the woman.

**2 Put the following words below into the correct columns.**

happiness, shoulder, cap, child, daughter, hair, heart, hunger, baby, parents, cousin, face, suit, grandmother, father, wife, knees, foot, neck, surprise, legs, stockings, nose, fear, hands, mother, anger, ear, uncle, back, son, joy, dress, grandparents, eyes,

collar, mouth, sister, cheeks, fingers, sadness, arms,  
brother, pleasure, shirt, rags

family	parts of the body	clothes	feelings

**3 Write down the opposites.**

- 1) to tell a lie —
- 2) to push —
- 3) to forget —
- 4) fear —
- 5) hard life —
- 6) low voice —
- 7) quiet voice —
- 8) life —

**4 Make up sentences using the following words once as a noun and once as a verb.**

cost, change, lie, answer, surprise, order, prison,  
crowd, help.

 **Discussing the Text**

**1 Say why:**

- 1) Miles Hendon said to the police officer not to touch the king.
- 2) the king was taken to the judge.
- 3) the judge said that the woman could change the cost of the pig.
- 4) Miles Hendon kissed the king.
- 5) the officer followed the woman to the hall.
- 6) the king was surprised when the judge sentenced him to a short term in prison.

**2 Prove that:**

both the judge and the police officer did not follow the laws strictly (строго).

**3 Add more details to the following:**

- 1) Suddenly a police officer appeared.
- 2) Hendon wanted to know why the officer followed the woman.
- 3) The king was very much surprised.

**4 Imagine that you are:**

- **The woman.** Say a) what you were talking about with the judge; b) with the police officer.
- **The police officer.** Say what you were talking about with the woman.
- **Miles Hendon.** Say what you heard in the hall.
- **Edward.** Say why you were surprised.

**5 Act out the talk between:**

- The judge and the woman.
- The woman and the police officer.

**6 What is your opinion?**

Why do you think the author says: “The judge said some kind words to the king.”

## Chapter XXIII FREEDOM

The short winter day was nearly over. There were almost no people in the streets. A few men were hurrying across the square. They looked neither to the right nor to the left and paid no attention to Edward the Sixth who, in the company of<sup>1</sup> Miles Hendon and the police officer, was also crossing the square.

Suddenly Hendon laid his hand upon the police officer's arm and said in a low voice:

“Wait a moment, good man, nobody hears us, and I want to say something to you.”

“I must not listen to you, sir, and we must hurry. It is dark already.”

But Hendon said, “Turn your back for a moment and pretend that you do not see: let this poor lad run away.”

“How can you say such a thing to me, sir! I shall arrest you!” cried the police officer.

<sup>1</sup> **in the company of** — в сопровождении

“No, don't be too quick. Be careful,”<sup>1</sup> said Hendon in the man's ear. “The pig you have bought for eightpence may cost you your head.”

The poor police officer could not speak at first. Hendon continued:

“I like you, friend, and if you do what I am asking you to do, I shall not tell the judge what I heard in the dark hall.”

Then Hendon repeated the talk which the officer and the woman had had together in the hall, word for word.<sup>2</sup>

“Dear sir, do not go to the judge. Tell him nothing about this! I have a large family. I have a wife and little children. What do you want of me, good sir?”

“You must only pretend to be blind<sup>3</sup> while I count slowly to a hundred thousand.”

“Very well! Go, I am blind, I see nothing.”

### Activities

#### ? *Checking Comprehension*

##### 1 **Make the right choice.**

- 1) A few people were hurrying
  - a) along the street
  - b) across the street
  - c) across the square

<sup>1</sup> **No, don't be too quick. Be careful** — Не торопись. Будь осторожен.

<sup>2</sup> **word for word** — слово в слово

<sup>3</sup> **pretend to be blind** [blaɪnd] — притвориться, что ты слепой

- 2) Suddenly Hendon laid his hand upon
  - a) the police officer's arm
  - b) the police officer's shoulder
  - c) the police officer's head
- 3) Hendon asked the police officer to
  - a) close his eyes for a moment
  - b) turn his back for a moment
  - c) wait for a moment
- 4) The police officer asked Hendon not to go to
  - a) the police department
  - b) prison
  - c) the judge
- 5) The police officer said that he had
  - a) a wife and two children
  - b) a wife and many children
  - c) a wife and little children

**2 Say whether the statement is true or false. Correct the false one.**

- 1) It was getting dark, and there were no people in the street.
- 2) Suddenly Hendon addressed the police officer.
- 3) Hendon asked the police officer to let the boy run away.
- 4) The police officer arrested Hendon.
- 5) The police officer could not pretend that he was blind.
- 6) Hendon counted to a thousand.

**3 Put the sentences in the right order.**

- 1) Hendon repeated the talk word for word.

- 2) The police officer let them go.
- 3) There were a few people crossing the square.
- 4) Hendon promised not to tell the judge anything.
- 5) The police officer did not know what to do.
- 6) Hendon asked the police officer to let the boy go.
- 7) The police officer agreed.

**4 Answer the following questions.**

- 1) Who accompanied Edward the Sixth to prison?
- 2) The police officer did not want to listen to what Hendon was going to tell him, did he?
- 3) Did Hendon make the police officer frightened?
- 4) What did Hendon tell the police officer word for word?
- 5) Did the police officer do what Hendon wanted of him, or didn't he?

 **Working with Vocabulary and Grammar**

**1 Say what the italicized words mean.**

- 1) “*Turn your back* for a moment,” said Hendon to the police officer.
- 2) “What do you *want of me*, good sir?” asked the police officer.

**2 Fill in the missing prepositions.**

When the king \_\_\_\_\_ the company \_\_\_\_\_ the police officer and Hendon went \_\_\_\_\_ the square, Hendon said \_\_\_\_\_ the police officer that he had something to tell him. And \_\_\_\_\_ a low voice he said \_\_\_\_\_

the police officer's ear what he had heard \_\_\_\_\_  
the dark hall word \_\_\_\_\_ word. The police officer  
agreed to pretend to be blind, so that the king could  
run \_\_\_\_\_ .

**3 Report the following in indirect speech.**

- 1) "I want to say something to you," said Hendon to the police officer.
- 2) "Turn your back for a moment and pretend that you do not see," said Hendon.
- 3) "How can you say such a thing to me! I shall arrest you!" cried the police officer.
- 4) "I shall not tell the judge what I heard in the dark hall," said Miles Hendon.
- 5) "Go, I am blind, I see nothing," agreed the police officer.

 ***Discussing the Text***

**1 Say why:**

- 1) the king was in the company of Miles Hendon and the police officer.
- 2) Miles Hendon put his hand upon the police officer's arm.
- 3) the police officer said that he would arrest Miles Hendon.
- 4) Miles Hendon said that the pig that the officer had bought might cost him his head.
- 5) the police officer asks Miles Hendon not to go to the judge.
- 6) the police officer pretended to be blind.

**2 Prove that:**

- 1) Miles Hendon was a clever man.
- 2) police officers in England were not paid well.

**3 Imagine that you are:**

- **Miles Hendon.** Say why you decided to talk to the police officer.
- **The police officer.** Say why you let the boy go.
- **Edward.** Say what you think of all this.

**4 Act out the talk between:**

Miles Hendon and the police officer.

**5 What is your opinion?**

Do you think it was a good idea of Miles Hendon to run away, or perhaps there was another way out?



## Chapter XXIV HENDON HALL

As soon as Hendon and the king were far enough from the police officer, Hendon instructed Edward to hurry to some place out of town and wait there. While the king waited, Hendon went to the inn to pay for the room. Half an hour later the two friends met and started for Hendon Hall on their donkeys.

The king was warm now for he had taken off his rags and put on the second-hand suit which Miles Hendon had bought for him.

When they had travelled about ten miles, they reached a large village and stopped there for the night at a good

inn. All was as before: Hendon stood behind the king's chair while Edward dined; undressed him when he was ready for bed; then lay down on the floor and slept at the door, covering himself with a blanket.

The next day and the day after, they went slowly on, and Hendon told the king how he had looked for him.

"You see, your majesty," he said, "that 'archangel' led me like a fool all over the forest.<sup>1</sup> He took me back to the hut when he understood that I did not want to go away without you. The old man went into the hut and I waited for him. In a few moments he came out looking sad and worried. He said he had thought you had come back and lain down there to rest, but it was not so, you were not there. I had waited at the hut all day. Then my hope to see you died out<sup>2</sup> and I left to look for you somewhere else."

Then the king told him his own story, after which Hendon said he was sorry he had not killed the 'archangel'.

On the last day of their trip Hendon talked about his old father and his brother Arthur. He told the king many things that showed what good people they were. He talked of his love for Edith. He even said a kind word about Hugh,<sup>3</sup> his younger brother.

At last he cried out:

---

<sup>1</sup> **all over the forest** — по всему лесу

<sup>2</sup> **my hope to see you died out** — я совсем потерял надежду увидеть вас

<sup>3</sup> **He even said a kind word about Hugh** — Он даже сказал доброе слово о Хью

“There is the village and there is Hendon Hall, your majesty! And that wood there — that is my father’s park. Let us hurry!”

When the travellers reached the end of the village, they turned into a narrow road. They went along it for half a mile, then passed into a green park through a wide gate. A large beautiful house was before them.

“Welcome to Hendon Hall, my king!”<sup>1</sup> Hendon cried out. “Ah, it is a great day! My father and my brother and Lady Edith will be so happy to see us. I am sure they will make their house and hearts your home forever!”

The next moment Hendon took the king by the hand and entered the house. He brought him to a large apartment, then ran towards a young man who sat at a writing-table in front of a fire.

“Kiss me, Hugh,” he cried, “and say you are glad I have come back! And call our father! Home is not home to me till I see his face and hear his voice once more!”<sup>2</sup>

But Hugh looked at him in great surprise. Then he said slowly and quietly:

“You are mistaken, poor stranger. Whom are you taking me for?”<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> **Welcome to Hendon Hall, my king!** — Добро пожаловать в Гендон Холл, король!

<sup>2</sup> **till I see his face and hear his voice once more** — пока я снова не увижу его лицо и не услышу его голос

<sup>3</sup> **You are mistaken, poor stranger. Whom are you taking me for?** — Ты ошибаешься, бедный незнакомец. За кого ты меня принимаешь?

“Taking you for? I’m taking you for Hugh Hendon,” said Hendon. “For whom else can I take you?”

The young man continued in the same tone:

“And who do you imagine *you* are?”

“I do not imagine anything. Do you want to pretend that you do not know me — your elder brother Miles Hendon?”

“What! Can that be true?” Hugh cried out. “Can the dead come to life?”<sup>1</sup> Ah, it seems too good to be true! No, it cannot be true. Please do not mock at me! Quick — come to the light — let me see you better!”

He took Miles by the arm, dragged him to the window and looked at him from head to foot, turning him this way and that.<sup>2</sup>

Miles smiled and laughed all the time.

“Well, brother,” he said, “do you see now that I am really your old Miles, your lost elder brother? Ah, my dear old Hugh, this is a great day! Give me your hand, give me your cheek, I want to kiss you!”

He was about to take Hugh in his arms,<sup>3</sup> but Hugh made a step back. He said sadly:

“Perhaps other eyes will see what I cannot see. Alas, I fear that the letter spoke the truth.”

“What letter?”

---

<sup>1</sup> **Can the dead come to life?** — Разве мертвые могут оживать?

<sup>2</sup> **looked at him from head to foot, turning him this way and that** — принялся его осматривать с ног до головы, поворачивая его то так, то эдак

<sup>3</sup> **He was about to take Hugh in his arms** — Он собирался обнять Хью

“The letter that came six or seven years ago. It said my brother Miles died in battle.”

“It was a lie! Call our father — he will know me.”

“I cannot call the dead.”

“Dead? My father is dead?” Hendon’s mouth trembled. “Oh, this news is a heavy blow! Then let me see my elder brother Arthur — he will know me.”

“He is also dead.”

“God have mercy,<sup>1</sup> cried Hendon, “both are dead! Do not say that Lady Edith...”

“Is dead? No, she lives.”

“Thank god! Hurry, brother — let her come to me! She will not say that I am not myself — she will know me. Bring her and bring the old servants — they, too, will know me.”

“All are dead. Only five of the old servants live — Peter, Halsey, David, Bernard, and Margaret.”

Hugh left the room.

“It is strange. Of the twenty-seven servants that we had, twenty-two honest people died. The servants that are alive have always been dishonest ones,” said Hendon to himself.

He continued walking up and down the room. He forgot about the king. The king felt sorry for him.

“Ah, my king,” said Hendon, “I hope you believe me, do you not? Wait and you will see. Lady Edith will say that I speak the truth. Here I was born, my lord, here I grew up. I want you to believe me!”

“I believe you,” said the king.

“I thank you out of my heart!” cried Hendon.

At that moment the door opened and Hugh entered. A beautiful lady, richly clothed, followed Hugh, and after her came several servants. The lady walked slowly. Her head was bowed<sup>1</sup> and she looked upon the floor. Her face was terribly sad. Miles Hendon ran forward crying out:

“Oh, my Edith, my dear Edith...”

But Hugh stopped him and said to the lady:

“Look upon him. Do you know him?”

At the sound of Miles’s voice the woman’s cheeks got red, she was trembling now. She stood still for several moments. Then she slowly lifted her head and looked into Hendon’s face. Her cheeks turned pale and her eyes were frightened.<sup>2</sup> Then she said in a dead voice:

“I do not know him!”

She turned, with a moan, and went out of the room.

Miles Hendon sat down and covered his face with his hands. In a few moments his brother said to the servants:

“Look at this man. Do you know him?”

They shook their heads, then their master turned to Hendon and said:

“The servants do not know you, sir. I fear there is some mistake. You have seen that my wife doesn’t know you.”

“Your *wife!* Hendon cried out. “Oh, now I see it all! You have written this letter yourself, and you have

<sup>1</sup> God have mercy — Боже, смилуйся надо мной

<sup>1</sup> Her head was bowed [bawd] — Ее голова была низко опущена

<sup>2</sup> her eyes were frightened — в ее глазах застыл страх



stolen my bride! Go away, or I shall kill you, dishonest and cruel man!”

With a red face, Hugh ordered the servants to attack the stranger.

But one of them cried:

“He is armed,<sup>1</sup> sir Hugh, and we have no arms.”

“Armed?” said Hugh. “What of it? You are so many! Go and arm yourselves and guard the door or he will run away!”

“Run away?” cried Miles. “You can be sure I shall not run away. Miles Hendon is master of Hendon Hall and he will stay here!”

### Activities

#### ? *Checking Comprehension*

##### 1 Make the right choice.

- 1) On the way to Hendon Hall Miles Hendon and the king stopped for the night at
  - a) a big inn
  - b) a poor inn
  - c) a good inn
- 2) As before, Miles Hendon slept on the floor covering himself with
  - a) rags
  - b) a blanket
  - c) his coat

- 3) Miles Hendon said that the “archangel” had led him
  - a) all over the forest
  - b) all over the village
  - c) out of the forest
- 4) A large beautiful house stood
  - a) in a green park
  - b) in the centre of a village
  - c) at the end of a village
- 5) In a large apartment a young man was sitting
  - a) by the window
  - b) in front of the fire
  - c) by the door
- 6) Hugh pretended that he did not
  - a) hear Miles Hendon
  - b) know Miles Hendon
  - c) understand Miles Hendon
- 7) Hugh took Miles by the arm and dragged him to
  - a) the door
  - b) the fire
  - c) the window
- 8) The letter said that Miles Hendon died
  - a) in prison
  - b) in battle
  - c) in the continent
- 9) Of the twenty-seven servants Miles Hendon had
  - a) twenty-two were alive
  - b) twenty were alive
  - c) five were alive

---

<sup>1</sup> He is armed — Он вооружен

- 10) Lady Edith held up her head slowly, and looked
  - a) into Hendon's face
  - b) at Hugh
  - c) through the window

- 11) Hugh ordered the servants to
  - a) arrest the stranger
  - b) push away the stranger
  - c) attack the stranger

**2 Say whether the statement is true or false. Correct the false one.**

- 1) As soon as Miles Hendon and the king were far away from the police officer, they started for Hendon Hall.
- 2) The king was dressed in a new suit, and he was warm.
- 3) At the inn Miles Hendon served the king as before.
- 4) Miles Hendon told Edward about his love for his father, his brothers and for Edith.
- 5) They went into a beautiful park through a wide gate.
- 6) Hendon brought the king to a large apartment, and introduced him to his brother.
- 7) Miles Hendon thought that Hugh took him for a wrong person.
- 8) Hugh was very much surprised to see his elder brother.
- 9) Miles Hendon was about to die, when he knew about his father's death.

- 10) Edith knew who was the stranger, but she did not show it.
- 11) Miles Hendon was armed, and the servants were afraid of him.

**3 Say what you understand by the following.**

- 1) "I am sure they will make their house and hearts your home forever."
- 2) "It seems too good to be true!"

**4 Answer the following questions.**

- 1) Where did Miles Hendon and the king go to as soon as they were far from the police officer?
- 2) Did they stay at an inn, or did they go on traveling without stop?
- 3) What did they tell each other on the way?
- 4) What did Miles Hendon and the king see when they entered the park?
- 5) Hugh pretended that he did not know Miles Hendon, didn't he?
- 6) What about the servants? They knew their master, didn't they?
- 7) Edith was afraid to show her feelings, wasn't she?
- 8) What letter did Hugh talk about?
- 9) What did Miles Hendon know about his father and his elder brother?
- 10) What about the servants? Were they all alive?
- 11) What about the king? Did he believe Miles Hendon?
- 12) Did Hugh want to kill Miles Hendon, or did he want him to go away?

**1 Say what the italicized words mean.**

- 1) "Do you see now that I am your *lost elder brother*?"
- 2) The king *felt sorry* for Miles Hendon.
- 3) A beautiful lady, *richly clothed*, entered the hall.
- 4) She said in *a dead voice*: "I don't know him."
- 5) "Do you know him?" he said. They *shook their heads*.
- 6) "You have stolen my bride!" cried out Hendon.
- 7) Hugh ordered the servants *to attack* the stranger.

**2 Write down the opposites of the following word combinations.**

- 1) second hand suit —
- 2) narrow road —
- 3) great day —
- 4) young man —
- 5) poor stranger —
- 6) same tone —
- 7) heavy blow —
- 8) dishonest man —
- 9) red face —
- 10) armed people —
- 11) sad news —
- 12) broken heart —
- 13) frightened eyes —
- 14) trembling voice —

**3 Complete the sentences with the words from the box.**

love for  
grew up  
frightened  
reached  
turned  
sorry for  
narrow  
held up  
turned into  
back  
arms  
left  
look for  
look into

- 1) The king felt \_\_\_\_\_ Miles Hendon.
- 2) Miles Hendon wanted the king to believe him that he was born and \_\_\_\_\_ there.
- 3) She \_\_\_\_\_ her head and \_\_\_\_\_ his face. Her cheeks \_\_\_\_\_ pale, and her eyes were \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4) Soon they \_\_\_\_\_ the end of the village and \_\_\_\_\_ a \_\_\_\_\_ road.
- 5) He was about to take Hugh in his \_\_\_\_\_, but Hugh made a step \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6) Miles Hendon \_\_\_\_\_ the hut to \_\_\_\_\_ the king somewhere else.
- 7) He talked of his \_\_\_\_\_ Edith.

**4 Fill in the missing prepositions.**

Miles Hendon paid \_\_\_\_\_ the inn, and soon the two friends started \_\_\_\_\_ Hendon Hall \_\_\_\_\_ their donkeys. The king had a warm suit \_\_\_\_\_. When they reached a village, they stopped \_\_\_\_\_ an inn. \_\_\_\_\_ supper Hendon stood \_\_\_\_\_ the king's chair, then he put him \_\_\_\_\_ bed, lay \_\_\_\_\_ the floor \_\_\_\_\_ the door, and slept there. The other two days they went \_\_\_\_\_ their ride, and \_\_\_\_\_ their way they were telling each other what had happened \_\_\_\_\_ them. \_\_\_\_\_ the last day \_\_\_\_\_ their trip the king knew from Hendon \_\_\_\_\_ his love \_\_\_\_\_ Edith. They reached the end \_\_\_\_\_ the village, turned \_\_\_\_\_ a narrow road, then passed a green park.

**5 Match the two halves of the sentence.**

- 1) In a few minutes he returned looking
- 2) He asked him to come to the light
- 3) Perhaps other eyes will see what
- 4) The letter said that Miles Hendon
- 5) Miles Hendon spoke in a trembling voice
- 6) It was strange for him that his honest servants
- 7) He sat down and covered his face

- a) ...when he knew his father was dead
- b) ...with his arms.
- c) ...sad and worried.
- d) ...to see him better.
- e) ...I cannot see.
- f) ...died in battle.
- g) ...were dead.

 **Discussing the Text**

**1 Say why:**

- 1) Miles Hendon and the king started for Hendon Hall.
- 2) Miles Hendon stood behind the king's chair and slept on the floor.
- 3) Hendon was sure that his father, his brother, and Lady Edith would be happy to see the king in their house.
- 4) Hugh pretended not to know Miles Hendon.
- 5) Miles Hendon asked Hugh to bring Edith and the old servants to look at him.
- 6) Edith's eyes were frightened when she looked at Miles Hendon.
- 7) Hugh ordered the servants to attack Miles Hendon.
- 8) Miles Hendon was not going to run away.

**2 Prove that:**

- 1) Miles Hendon loved his father, his brother, and Lady Edith.
- 2) Miles Hendon was happy to see his younger brother.
- 3) Hugh was dishonest and cruel.
- 4) Hugh frightened Lady Edith.

**3 Add more details to the following:**

- 1) The king was warm now.
- 2) At supper all was as before.
- 3) Hendon took the king by the hand.

- 4) Hugh was surprised to see Hendon.
- 5) Hendon walked up and down the room.
- 6) The lady walked slowly.

**4 Imagine that you are:**

- **Hugh.** Say what you felt when you saw your brother.
- **Lady Edith.** Say what Hugh told you about the stranger.
- **Miles Hendon.** Say how your brother met you.
- **Edward.** Say what you felt during this meeting.

**5 Act out the talk between:**

- Miles Hendon and Hugh Hendon.
- Hugh and the servant.
- Hugh and Lady Edith.

**6 What is your opinion?**

Do you have any ideas why Miles' father and his elder brother had died?

## Chapter XXV HENDON AND THE KING ARE TAKEN TO PRISON

The king sat thinking for a few moments, then looked up and said:

“It is strange, very strange. I cannot understand it.”  
“What is it that is strange?”

“It is strange that nobody is looking for the king; that no messengers were describing my person. Nobody is worried about the head of the state who is lost!”<sup>1</sup>

“True, true, my king, I have forgotten,” said Miles. “Poor boy,” he thought, “he still thinks he is the king.”

“But I have a plan that will help us both,” the king continued. “I shall write a letter in three languages — Latin, Greek and English. You will hurry with it to London tomorrow morning. Give it to my uncle, Lord Hertford. When he sees it, he will know and say that I wrote it. Then he will send for me at once.

“Will it not be better,<sup>2</sup> your majesty, if we wait here a little longer? I shall get my rights to Hendon Hall and then...”

But the king was not listening to him.

“Stop,” he said. “Do what I am telling you to do!”

He took Hugh's pen from the writing-table and began to write.

Hendon looked at him for some time, then said to himself:

“When he gets angry he looks like a true king. But what shall I do? Tomorrow morning he will send me to London with this letter. He imagines that it is written in Latin and Greek.”

In a few minutes the king handed him the letter which he had written. Hendon took it and put it in his

---

<sup>1</sup> Nobody is worried about the head of the state who is lost! — Никто не озабочен исчезновением главы государства!

<sup>2</sup> Will it not be better — Не лучше ли будет

pocket. He did not even look at it. He was thinking of something else. He was thinking of Lady Edith.

“Why did she say she did not know me?” he thought. “She cannot lie and I am sure she knew me. Ah, stop... I think I begin to understand. Hugh made her lie. She seemed dead with fear. I must see her, she will remember the old times when we were children and played together, she will remember everything. She was always honest and true. She loved me in those old days<sup>1</sup> when we grew together.”

He stepped towards the door at that moment it opened and Lady Edith entered. She was very pale and her face was as sad as before. She sat down and asked Miles to do so.

“Sir,” she said, “I have come to save you. Hurry and leave the house. If you stay, you will be lost.<sup>2</sup> My husband is master here. I know what he will do. He will ruin you. I am his slave and I know him very well. Go, do not lose time!”

Miles rose and stood before her.

“I ask you of one thing only,” said Hendon. “Look straight into my eyes and answer me. Am I Miles Hendon?”

“No, I do not know you.”

At that moment some officers ran into the room and attacked Hendon. Hendon began to fight, but soon he was tied and dragged away. The king was also taken, and both were led to prison.

<sup>1</sup> **in those old days** — в то давнее время

<sup>2</sup> **If you stay, you will be lost** — Если вы останетесь, вы погибнете

## Activities

### ? *Checking Comprehension*

#### 1 **Make the right choice.**

- 1) The king thought it strange that nobody
  - a) was listening to him
  - b) was looking for him
  - c) knew about him
- 2) The king wrote a letter in
  - a) Latin, French, and English
  - b) Greek, Italian, and English
  - c) Latin, Greek and English
- 3) The king wrote a letter
  - a) the next day
  - b) in a few minutes
  - c) in about an hour
- 4) Miles Hendon put the letter into
  - a) his pocket
  - b) his hat
  - c) his bag
- 5) Miles Hendon could think only about
  - a) his lost house
  - b) his father
  - c) Lady Edith
- 6) Miles Hendon decided to
  - a) speak to his brother Hugh
  - b) go and speak to Edith
  - c) call Edith to that room

- 7) Suddenly the door opened and
  - a) a servant entered
  - b) Hugh entered
  - c) Lady Edith entered
- 8) Lady Edith wanted Miles Hendon to
  - a) talk to Hugh again
  - b) save her from Hugh
  - c) leave the house immediately
- 9) Miles Hendon fought with
  - a) Hugh's servants
  - b) Hugh and his servants
  - c) some officers

**2 Put the sentences in the right order.**

- 1) But at this moment Edith herself entered the room.
- 2) So he decided to write a letter in Latin, Greek, and English.
- 3) The king thought it strange that nobody was looking for him, nobody was worried about him.
- 4) But Hendon's thoughts were about Edith.
- 5) Miles Hendon understood that Hugh had made Edith lie.
- 6) She asked Miles to leave the house.
- 7) They tied up Hendon.
- 8) He decided to speak to her again.
- 9) At that moment some officers ran into the room.
- 10) He took the letter from the king.
- 11) Both the king and Miles Hendon were led to prison.

- 12) The king decided to send Miles Hendon to London to hand the letter to Lord Hertford.
- 13) And without reading the letter he put it into his pocket.

**3 Say whether the statement is true or false. Correct the false one.**

- 1) The king thought it was strange that nobody had come to Hendon Hall to take him.
- 2) The king wrote a letter in two languages.
- 3) The king wrote a letter to the lords of the English court.
- 4) Miles Hendon lost his rights to Hendon Hall.
- 5) Miles Hendon put the letter in his pocket without reading it, because he was busy at that moment.
- 6) Miles Hendon hoped that Lady Edith would remember him if he spoke to her.
- 7) Lady Edith entered the room to tell Hendon that she did not know him.
- 8) Hugh and his servants attacked Hendon, and took him to prison.

**4 Answer the following questions.**

- 1) What was strange for the king?
- 2) What plan did he have that could help both him and Miles Hendon?
- 3) What did Miles Hendon do with the letter?
- 4) What was Miles Hendon thinking about then?
- 5) Lady Edith entered the room to save Miles, didn't she?
- 6) What did she tell Miles Hendon?

- 7) Who attacked Miles Hendon?
- 8) What happened to the king?

### **Working with Vocabulary and Grammar**

#### **1 Say what the italicized words mean.**

- 1) She *seemed dead* with fear.
- 2) The king *handed* him a letter, which he had written.
- 3) “What *shall I do?*” he thought.

### **Discussing the Text**

#### **1 Say why:**

- 1) the king wrote a letter to Lord Hertford.
- 2) the king wrote a letter in three languages.
- 3) Miles Hendon put the letter in his pocket without reading it.
- 4) Miles Hendon wanted to see Lady Edith again.
- 5) Lady Edith came to see Miles Hendon.
- 6) Lady Edith said that she did not know Miles Hendon.
- 7) Miles Hendon and the king were taken to prison.

#### **2 Prove that:**

- 1) Miles Hendon did not know that he was saving the King of England.
- 2) Hendon’s thought were about Lady Edith that time.
- 3) Lady Edith was worried about Miles Hendon.

#### **3 Add more details to the following:**

- 1) The king had a plan to help both of them.
- 2) The king handed the letter to Miles Hendon.
- 3) The door opened, and Lady Edith entered.
- 4) Some officers ran into the room.

#### **4 Imagine that you are:**

- **Edward.** Say about your plan.
- **Miles Hendon.** Say a) what you think of the king’s plan; b) why you want to see Lady Edith
- **Lady Edith.** Say why you thought that Hugh would ruin Miles Hendon.

#### **5 Act out the talk between:**

- Edward and Miles Hendon.
- Edward and Lady Edith.

#### **6 What is your opinion?**

Do you think Miles Hendon was right thinking that Hugh had frightened Lady Edith, or do you have your own ideas about that?

## **Chapter XXVI IN PRISON**

The two friends were brought into a large room. There were twenty prisoners there — men and women. It was a noisy company. The king was very angry. Hendon was silent and sad.



They could not sleep that night because of the noise:<sup>1</sup> the prisoners were singing, fighting and shouting.

For a whole week the days and nights were just the same. Several times some servants from Hendon Hall came. They were sent by Hugh to look at Hendon and mock at him.

At last a change came.<sup>2</sup> One day an old man entered the room. When Hendon looked at him, he said to himself:

“This is Blake Andrews, who was a servant in my father’s family all his life. A good honest man. But I can’t be sure. Who knows? Maybe he came to mock at me, too, like the other servants who had come before him.”

When nobody was looking at them the old man dropped upon his knees and whispered:

“Thank god, you have come back, my dear master! I believed you were dead these seven years. I am so happy that you are alive! But say the word and I shall go and tell the truth to everybody, even if I am hanged for it.”

“No,” said Hendon, “you must not do it. It will ruin you and help me very little. But I thank you with all my heart for your kind words.”

The old servant became very useful to Hendon and the king. He came several times a day and brought them some food. Hendon gave it all to the king, as the boy could not eat the bad prison food. Andrews also brought them all the news that he could get.

---

<sup>1</sup> **They could not sleep that night because of the noise** — Из-за шума они не могли уснуть в эту ночь

<sup>2</sup> **At last a change came.** — Наконец произошло что-то новое.

Little by little<sup>1</sup> the old man told Hendon the story of the family during the time that Hendon was absent from home. Miles Hendon knew everything now. Arthur died six years ago. His death and the absence of news from Miles ruined his father’s health. He knew he was going to die soon, so he wanted Hugh and Edith to marry. But all the time Edith tried to put the marriage off<sup>2</sup> as she hoped for Miles’s home-coming.<sup>3</sup> Then the letter came which brought the news of Miles’s death. Now Sir Richard was sure that his end was near, so the marriage took place, by his death-bed.

It was not a happy marriage. Lady Edith found among her husband’s papers a letter about Miles’s death. Everything was clear to her now. It was Hugh who had written that letter. But it was too late to change anything. Hugh was a very cruel man. And he was cruel not only to the servants but to his young wife too.

Once the king got interested in<sup>4</sup> the old servant’s talk.

“People say that the king is mad,” said the servant, “but those who speak of it are hanged.”

His majesty looked at the old man angrily and said:

“The king is *not* mad, good man, this news is false!”

“What does the lad mean?” said Andrews. As he got no answer, he went on with his news: “King Henry VIII will be buried at Windsor<sup>5</sup> in a day or two — on the sixteenth of this month, I think. And the new king will be crowned at Westminster on the twentieth.”

---

<sup>1</sup> **Little by little** — Постепенно

<sup>2</sup> **to put the marriage off** — оттягивать свадьбу

<sup>3</sup> **home-coming** [ˈhəʊm ˌkʌmɪŋ] — возвращение домой

<sup>4</sup> **got interested in** — заинтересовался

<sup>5</sup> **Windsor** — Виндзор (город в Англии, где находится Виндзорский замок, резиденция королей в средние века)

“I think they must find him first,” said his majesty. The old man wanted to ask him what he meant, but Hendon stopped him with a question:

“Will sir Hugh go to the coronation?”

“Yes, he will,” said the old man. “And with great hopes to become a lord, for the Lord Protector<sup>1</sup> likes him very much.”

“What Lord Protector?” asked his majesty.

“Lord Hertford.”

“When did *he* become Lord Protector?” asked the king.

“On the last day of January.”

“And who made him Lord Protector?”

“Who? The Council of Lords with the help of the king.”

“The *king*?” cried Edward. “*What king*, my good man?”

“What king? (‘What is the matter with the boy?’ the old servant thought.) As we have only one king, it is not difficult to answer: His Majesty King Edward the Sixth. He is a dear little boy. I don’t know whether he is mad or not — people say he gets better every day. I only know that everybody loves him, for he began with saving the old Duke of Norfolk’s life,<sup>2</sup> and now he wants to destroy the cruellest of the English laws.”

The king did not know what to think. “Is this ‘dear little boy’ the same beggar-boy whom I left dressed in my own clothes in the palace? It does not seem possible, for his man-

<sup>1</sup> the Lord Protector — лорд-протектор (лицо, правящее страной до достижения монархом совершеннолетия)

<sup>2</sup> for he began with saving the old Duke of Norfolk’s life — потому что он начал с того, что сохранил жизнь старому герцогу Норфольскому

ners and speech were quite different from the manners and speech of the Prince of Wales. Can it be somebody else?”

These were Edward’s thoughts. The more he thought about the news the more he wanted<sup>1</sup> to get to London.

He slept very badly that night.

Among the prisoners there were two women who were very kind to Edward. For that he loved them with all his heart.

He asked them why they were in prison, and when they said they were Baptists,<sup>2</sup> he smiled and asked:

“Is that a crime for which people have to be shut up in prison?<sup>3</sup> I am sorry for I shall lose you soon — they will not keep you long for such a little thing.”<sup>4</sup>

They did not answer.

“Tell me, what will they do to you?” cried the king.

They tried to speak of other things, but he went on:

“Will they beat you? No, no, they will not be so cruel. Say they will not.”

One of the women said, crying:

“Oh, do not think of us, dear boy.”

“Then I understand they will beat you. Oh, you must not cry. When I am the king again, I shall change these cruel laws.”

<sup>1</sup> The more he thought about the news the more he wanted — Чем больше он думал об этой новости, тем больше ему хотелось

<sup>2</sup> Baptists [’bæptists] — баптисты (религиозная секта, возникшая в Англии в XVII веке как протест против официальной англиканской церкви)

<sup>3</sup> for which people have to be shut up in prison — за которое нужно сажать в тюрьму

<sup>4</sup> for such a little thing — из-за такого пустяка

## Activities

### ? *Checking Comprehension*

#### 1 **Make the right choice.**

- 1) Miles Hendon and the king could not sleep that night because of
  - a) the rain
  - b) the cold
  - c) the noise
- 2) Blake Andrews was
  - a) a good looking man
  - b) a good and honest servant
  - c) the oldest servant
- 3) Blake Andrews asked Miles Hendon to let him
  - a) go and tell the truth to everybody
  - b) hang his brother Hugh
  - c) kill his brother's servant
- 4) Miles Hendon gave the food that Andrews brought to him to the king because
  - a) the king was sick
  - b) the king couldn't eat the prison food
  - c) they gave not enough food in prison
- 5) Miles Hendon knew that his father had died because of no news
  - a) from him
  - b) from his elder brother Arthur
  - c) from him and Arthur's death
- 6) Lady Edith knew that Hugh had lied to her about Miles Hendon's death from

- a) his servants
  - b) the letter
  - c) some document
- 7) The king knew about the coronation from
    - a) the prisoners
    - b) Miles Hendon
    - c) Blake Andrews
  - 8) The king wanted to go to London because
    - a) he had no news about his family
    - b) the news he heard worried and surprised him
    - c) he wanted to arrest the "beggar-boy"
  - 9) The king promised the two kind women to
    - a) give them a lot of money
    - b) take them to the royal court
    - c) change the cruel laws.

#### 2 **Say whether the statement is true or false. Correct the false one.**

- 1) It was never quiet in the prison room where Miles Hendon and the king were brought.
- 2) Blake Andrews was Miles Hendon's servant.
- 3) Blake Andrews did not believe that Hendon was dead.
- 4) He brought some changes into the prison's life.
- 5) Miles Hendon knew the truth about Lady Edith and Hugh's marriage.
- 6) Sir Richard's health was ruined because of the absence of news from Miles Hendon.
- 7) Hugh was cruel to everybody in his house.
- 8) The Council of Lords made Lord Hertford Lord Protector.

- 9) Edward knew that the beggar-boy had become the King of England.
- 10) Edward was very sorry for the two poor women in prison, but he knew he could not help them.

**3 Put the sentences in the right order.**

- 1) Hugh's servants often came to mock at Miles Hendon.
- 2) The more news Edward knew, the more he wanted to go to London.
- 3) Blake Andrews brought news about the coronation of the new king.
- 4) Edward promised to change the laws, as soon as he was the king again.
- 5) The room in which the two friends were brought was full of men and women.
- 6) Blake Andrews had been an honest servant of Sir Richard.
- 7) They could not sleep because of the noise.
- 8) Blake Andrews told Hendon how his brother Arthur had died, and how his death had ruined Sir Richard's health.
- 9) Blake Andrews brought some change into their life in prison.
- 10) Blake Andrews said that everybody loved His Majesty King Edward the Sixth.

**4 Answer the following questions.**

- 1) How did the king and Miles Hendon feel when they were brought to prison?
- 2) What made their first days in prison even worse?

- 3) What was Blake Andrews?
- 4) Miles Hendon believed Blake Andrews, didn't he?
- 5) How did Blake Andrews make the king and Miles Hendon's life in prison a little easier?
- 6) What did Miles Hendon know about his father and brother?
- 7) What did he know about Hugh and Edith's marriage?
- 8) What news about the coronation of the new king did Blake Andrews bring?
- 9) What seemed impossible for Edward when he thought about the beggar-boy?
- 10) What was the crime of the two women who were kind to Edward?
- 11) What did Edward promise them?

 **Working with Vocabulary and Grammar**

**1 Say what the italicized words mean.**

- 1) "But I can't *be sure*. May be he came to mock at me, too, *like* the other servants who had come before him."
- 2) "I am so happy that you are *alive*."
- 3) "I thank you *with all my heart* for your *kind* words."
- 4) His death and *the absence* of news from Miles Hendon *ruined* his father's *health*.
- 5) He wanted Hugh and Edith *to marry*.
- 6) *The marriage* took place by his *deathbed*.
- 7) King Henry the Eighth will *be buried* at Windsor.
- 8) People say he *gets better* every day.

9) Now he wants *to destroy* the cruelest of the English laws.

10) It doesn't *seem possible*.

2 **Match the lines in each column to make the sentences complete.**

It seemed...

possible  
impossible  
easy  
difficult

for the king  
for Miles Hendon  
for Hugh  
for Edith  
for the 'archangel'  
for the officers  
for Tom  
for John Canty  
for Lord Hertford  
for Tom's mother

to stay with the tramps  
to change his manners  
of speech  
to run away from  
John Canty  
to notice his strange  
manners  
to attack and arrest  
Hendon  
to tell him a lie  
to hear their talk  
to be a king  
to beg and steal  
to make him beg and  
steal

3 **Fill in the missing prepositions.**

When Miles Hendon and the king were \_\_\_\_\_ prison, Hugh's servants often came to look \_\_\_\_\_ him and mock \_\_\_\_\_ him. Blake Andrews brought some \_\_\_\_\_ his life. He had been a servant \_\_\_\_\_ many years \_\_\_\_\_ Hendon's family. It was Blake Andrews who told Miles Hendon what had happened \_\_\_\_\_ the family \_\_\_\_\_ Hendon was absent \_\_\_\_\_ home.

Miles Hendon knew that Hugh and Edith's marriage had been \_\_\_\_\_ his father's death-bed. It was later that Edith knew \_\_\_\_\_ the letter. Everything was clear \_\_\_\_\_ her, but it was too late to change anything. Hugh was cruel \_\_\_\_\_ her. Blake Andrews also said that the new king would be crowned \_\_\_\_\_ Westminster \_\_\_\_\_ some days, and that everybody loved His Majesty King Edward the Sixth, who had begun \_\_\_\_\_ saving the old Duke's life, and wanted to destroy the cruelest \_\_\_\_\_ the English laws. It seemed impossible \_\_\_\_\_ Edward to believe that it could be that beggar-boy, whose manners and speech were so different \_\_\_\_\_ the manners and speech \_\_\_\_\_ the Prince \_\_\_\_\_ Wales.



**Discussing the Text**

1 **Say why:**

- 1) Miles Hendon and Edward found themselves in prison.
- 2) Miles Hendon was not sure whether to believe Blake Andrews or not.
- 3) Miles Hendon gave the food that Andrews brought him to the king.
- 4) Edith and Hugh's marriage was not happy.
- 5) Edward got interested in the old servant's talk.
- 6) Lord Hertford became Lord Protector.
- 7) everybody loved King Edward the Sixth.
- 8) the two poor women were in prison.
- 9) Edward said: "I shall change these cruel laws."

2 **Prove that:**

- 1) Hugh was a cruel and dishonest man.
- 2) Hugh did not love Edith.
- 3) Blake Andrews was a good-hearted man.
- 4) Edward had a kind heart.

3 **Add more details to the following:**

- 1) They could not sleep that night.
- 2) When nobody was looking at them, Blake Andrews approached Miles Hendon.
- 3) Sir Richard knew that he was going to die.
- 4) Among his papers she found a letter.
- 5) The Lord Protector liked Hugh very much.
- 6) Among the prisoners there were two women.

4 **Imagine that you are:**

- **Miles Hendon.** Say what you knew from the old servant about your family.
- **Blake Andrews.** Say how you recognized Miles Hendon and what you wanted to do for him.
- **Edward.** Say what news you got from the old servant, and what made you so sad.

5 **Act out the talk between:**

- Miles Hendon and Blake Andrews (their first meeting).
- Blake Andrews and Edward.
- Edward and one of the poor women.

6 **What is your opinion?**

Why do you think the king does not know how cruel his country's laws are?



## Chapter XXVII AN EXECUTION

When the king awoke in the morning, the women were not there.

“They are saved,” he said happily. “Soon I shall find you, my dear good friends, and take care of you.”

Suddenly some officers came and ordered the prisoners to go to the prison court.

In the court the prisoners were told to stand with their backs against the wall<sup>1</sup> and they were guarded by officers. Two women were standing in the centre of the court. The king saw that they were his good friends.

<sup>1</sup> with their backs against the wall — спиной к стене

“So they were not freed,” said the king to himself. “And how strange it is that I, the King of England, cannot defend them against these cruel people.”

Then the king saw a terrible thing: a lot of firewood was put around the two women and a man lighted it to make a fire.

The women bowed their heads and covered their faces with their hands: the fire began to burn their clothes; suddenly two young girls cried out and ran forward. They threw themselves upon the women but the officers tore them away.<sup>1</sup> The girls cried that they wanted to die with their mothers. One of them ran up to her mother again and threw herself on her mother’s neck. She was torn away once more. Two or three men held her. She could not free herself and cried:

“I shall be quite alone in the world now.”

The two girls cried all the time and tried to get free. Suddenly other more terrible cries were heard<sup>2</sup> these were the cries of the dying mothers. The king looked from the girls to the women, then turned away and did not look any more. He was very pale. He said:

“I shall never forget what I have seen. I shall see it all the days of my life, and dream of it every night till I die.”

That same day several new prisoners were brought in. The king spoke to them. One of the prisoners was a poor woman who had stolen a small piece of cloth. She was sentenced to be hanged for it.<sup>3</sup> Another was a man

<sup>1</sup> **tore them away** — отташили их

<sup>2</sup> **other more terrible cries were heard** — раздались еще более раздирающие душу крики

<sup>3</sup> **She was sentenced to be hanged for it.** — Ее за это приговорили к виселице.

who had killed a deer in the king’s park and he, too, was sentenced to be hanged. A lad found a hawk<sup>1</sup> one evening, that had flown away from its owner; he took it home with him. The court sentenced him to death for stealing.

There was also an old man who had written a pamphlet<sup>2</sup> against the Lord Chancellor. For that his ears were cut off and he was sentenced to stay in prison all his life.

The king’s eyes burned with anger. He said:

“Nobody believes in me. But it does not matter. In a month you will be free — all of you. And more, I shall change the laws that bring shame on England. The world is made wrong.<sup>3</sup> Kings must see what their own laws do, and they must learn mercy.”

## Activities

### ? *Checking Comprehension*

#### 1 **Make the right choice.**

- 1) The king thought that he would take care of
  - a) Miles Hendon
  - b) the two poor women
  - c) Blake Andrews

<sup>1</sup> **a hawk** [hɔ:k] — сокол

<sup>2</sup> **pamphlet** [ˈpæmfɪt] — памфлет (*небольшое произведение, обычно политического характера, направленное против какого-нибудь лица*)

<sup>3</sup> **The world is made wrong** — Свет плохо (неправильно) устроен

- 2) The prisoners were told to stand with their backs against
- a) the wall
  - b) the door
  - c) the fence
- 3) It was strange for the king that he could not
- a) free all the prisoners
  - b) defend those poor women
  - c) say who he was
- 4) The girls cried that they wanted to
- a) die with their mothers
  - b) kiss their mothers
  - c) free their mothers
- 5) The girls cried all the time and tried to
- a) run away
  - b) hold their mother
  - c) get free
- 6) The woman who was sentenced to be hanged had stolen
- a) a small piece of cloth
  - b) a small piece of bread
  - c) a little pig
- 7) The man who was sentenced to be hanged had killed
- a) a goat in the wood
  - b) a fox in the forest
  - c) a hawk in the king's park
- 8) The man who was sentenced to stay in prison all his life had written a pamphlet against

- a) the Lord Chancellor
- b) the Lord Protector
- c) the Constable of the Tower

**2 Put the sentences in the right order.**

- 1) The king saw those two poor women in the centre of the prison court.
- 2) The officers were holding two crying girls.
- 3) The officers ordered the prisoners to go to prison court.
- 4) A fire was made around the two women.
- 5) The king turned away and did not look any more.
- 6) The stories that the king had heard made his eyes burn with anger.
- 7) The new prisoners told the king why they were in prison.

**3 Say whether the statement is true or false. Correct the false one.**

- 1) The officers ordered the prisoners to stand up.
- 2) The officers guarded the women standing in the middle of the room.
- 3) The officers made a big fire in the centre of the prison court.
- 4) Two girls were standing near the women.
- 5) The officers tore the girls away from the women.
- 6) Terrible cries were heard all over the prison court.
- 7) The king spoke to many new prisoners.
- 8) Their stories made the king feel that many laws brought shame on England.



4 Answer the following questions.

- 1) What did the king see when he awoke in the morning?
- 2) Where were the prisoners taken to?
- 3) What seemed strange for the king to see?
- 4) What was happening in the center of the prison court?
- 5) Who were the crying girls?
- 6) What happened to the poor women?
- 7) What sort of crime brought new people to prison?
- 8) What made the king's eyes burn with anger?
- 9) What sort of laws did the king think he would change?

 Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 Say what the italicized words mean.

- 1) The king *awoke* in the morning.
- 2) The king hoped that he would find the women and *take care of* them.
- 3) It was strange for the king that he could not *defend* them *against* those cruel people.
- 4) Two young girls cried out and ran *forward*.
- 5) The officers *were holding* the girl who wanted to *get free*.
- 6) His ears *were cut off* for a pamphlet *against* the Lord Chancellor.
- 7) Several new prisoners *were brought in*.
- 8) The king's eyes *burned with anger*.

9) "Nobody *believes in* me. But *it doesn't matter*," thought the king. "I shall change the laws that *bring shame on England*."

2 Complete the sentences with the words from the box. Use the correct tense form.

take care of  
bring shame on  
burn with anger  
awake  
defend ... against  
cut off  
bring in  
the more ... the more  
believe in  
get free  
alone  
change

- 1) He \_\_\_\_\_ in the morning but could not see them.
- 2) Cruel laws \_\_\_\_\_ any country.
- 3) The king was very sad because nobody \_\_\_\_\_ him.
- 4) He thought that when \_\_\_\_\_, he would \_\_\_\_\_ those cruel laws.
- 5) Miles Hendon wanted to \_\_\_\_\_ the little boy.
- 6) He did not know how to \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_ those cruel laws.
- 7) They \_\_\_\_\_ his ears for such a little thing.

- 8) He \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_ and left him \_\_\_\_\_ .
- 9) Those terrible stories made his eyes \_\_\_\_\_ .
- 10) \_\_\_\_\_ he thought about that \_\_\_\_\_ he wanted to go to London.

**3 Fill in the missing prepositions.**

The king wanted to take care \_\_\_\_\_ the poor women, but the next morning they were not \_\_\_\_\_ the room. All the prisoners were taken \_\_\_\_\_ the prison court, and ordered to stand \_\_\_\_\_ the wall. The king saw the women \_\_\_\_\_ the centre \_\_\_\_\_ the prison court, and was sorry \_\_\_\_\_ them. He could not defend them \_\_\_\_\_ those cruel people who were putting a lot \_\_\_\_\_ firewood \_\_\_\_\_ the women. Suddenly two crying girls ran \_\_\_\_\_ , threw themselves \_\_\_\_\_ the women, but the officers tore them \_\_\_\_\_. The cry \_\_\_\_\_ the dying mothers made the king turn \_\_\_\_\_. He turned pale \_\_\_\_\_ fear and anger. He knew that he could not do anything \_\_\_\_\_ them. Other stories \_\_\_\_\_ the poor prisoners made his eyes burn \_\_\_\_\_ anger. He knew now that he would change the laws that brought shame \_\_\_\_\_ his country.

**4 Put the words in the right order to make questions and answer them.**

- 1) they, told, to, with, against, were, why, wall, stand, backs, their, the?
- 2) torn, from who, mother, away, was, her?
- 3) several, brought, day, the, prisoners, where, in, were, same?

- 4) long, the, sentenced, to, prison, how, was, man, stay, old, in?
- 5) wrong, why, the, made, world, is?

 **Discussing the Text**

**1 Say why:**

- 1) the prisoners were ordered to go to the prison court.
- 2) the officers guarded the prisoners.
- 3) two women were standing in the center of the prison court.
- 4) a fire was made around the women.
- 5) two girls were crying and running forward.
- 6) the king turned away and was pale.
- 7) why the king said that he would never forget what he had seen.
- 8) a woman was sentenced to be hanged.
- 9) a man was sentenced to be hanged.
- 10) a lad was sentenced to death.
- 11) an old man was sentenced to stay in prison all his life.
- 12) the king's eyes burned with anger.

**2 Prove that:**

- 1) the girls were suffering very much.
- 2) the king was sympathetic for the poor prisoners.
- 3) the king was angry with the officers.
- 4) the king was learning life.

**3 Add more details to the following:**

- 1) The king awoke in the morning.
- 2) The king saw a terrible thing.
- 3) Suddenly two girls ran forward.
- 4) The king spoke to the new prisoners.
- 5) "I shall change the laws," thought the king.

**4 Imagine that you are:**

- **Edward.** Say what you will do for your country.
- **One of the officers.** Say what you were ordered to do.
- **One of the prisoners.** Say what you were ordered to do.

**5 Act out the talk between:**

- Edward and one of the officers.
- Edward and a poor woman who had stolen a small piece of cloth.
- Edward and a man who had killed a deer.
- Edward and a lad who had found a hawk.
- An old man who had written a pamphlet.

**6 What is your opinion?**

- "The world is made wrong."
- "Kings must see what their own laws do."
- "They must learn mercy."
- Cruel laws bring shame on the country.

Do you agree with everything here, or do you have your own ideas about these statements?

- Say
- a) who makes laws in your country;
  - b) who chooses those who makes laws;
  - c) who is responsible for bad or cruel laws;
  - d) who brings shame on the country.

Make your conclusions.

## Chapter XXVIII THE SACRIFICE

The day of the trial came. For attacking the master of Hendon Hall, Miles Hendon was sentenced to sit two hours in the pillory.<sup>1</sup> The king was not sentenced to any punishment only because he was too young. They let him off with a lecture for being in such a bad company.

When he came to the square with other people, he saw his friend.

Hendon was sitting in the pillory and the crowd was mocking at him. Edward had heard the sentence, but he had not understood what it meant. Now he got so angry that he did not know what he was doing. He ran up to the officer who was standing near by and shouted:

"For shame!<sup>2</sup> He is my servant. Let him go at once! I am the..."

"Silence," shouted Hendon. "Do not pay any attention to him, officer, he is mad."

---

<sup>1</sup> to sit two hours in the pillory — два часа сидеть в колодке у позорного столба (унизительное наказание, применявшееся в средние века)

<sup>2</sup> For shame! — Постыдись!

“Very well,” answered the officer, “I shall not pay any attention to his foolish words. But I want to teach him a good lesson for saying them.”<sup>1</sup>

He turned to a soldier and said:

“Give the little fool a lash or two, it will teach him better manners!”

“Five or six lashes will teach him a better lesson,” said Sir Hugh, who had ridden up on a beautiful horse a moment before. He wanted to see his brother’s punishment.

The king did not even move when the soldier caught him, he understood that he was quite helpless in the soldier’s hands. Miles Hendon said to the soldier:

“Let the child go. I will take his lashes. Let him go, do you not see how young he is?”

“Thank you for a good idea,” said Sir Hugh. “Let the young beggar go, and give this man five or six lashes!”

Hendon was taken out of the pillory. His jacket was taken off and he was beaten with the lash. The poor little king turned his face away from Miles. He did not want him to see the tears that were running down his cheeks.

## Activities

### ? *Checking Comprehension*

#### 1 Make the right choice.

- 1) Miles Hendon was sentenced to  
a) be beaten with a lash

<sup>1</sup> I want to teach him a good lesson for saying them — я хочу проучить его за то, что он их (слова) сказал

- b) sit two hours in the pillory  
c) a year in prison

- 2) When the king came to the square he saw  
a) his friend  
b) a crowd of people  
c) Sir Hugh
- 3) The king ran up to the officer and shouted:  
a) “He is my servant.”  
b) “He is my master.”  
c) “He is my friend.”
- 4) Sir Hugh arrived to look at the punishment  
a) sitting on a donkey  
b) sitting on a horse  
c) sitting in a carriage
- 5) The soldier caught the king and  
a) held him in his hands  
b) pushed him away from the place  
c) gave him five lashes
- 6) Miles Hendon took the king’s lashes on himself  
because  
a) he was his friend  
b) he was too young  
c) the king was crying
- 7) The soldiers took Hendon out of the pillory and beat him with  
a) a stick  
b) a lash  
c) their hands

**2 Say whether the statement is true or false. Correct the false one.**

- 1) Miles Hendon was sentenced to a hard punishment for attacking the servants of Hendon Hall.
- 2) They let the king go because he was too young.
- 3) It was not clear for the king how they would punish Miles Hendon.
- 4) The king ran up to the officer and pushed him off Miles Hendon.
- 5) The officer wanted to teach the king a lesson.
- 6) Sir Hugh enjoyed the punishment of his brother.
- 7) The king understood that he was helpless in the hands of the soldier.
- 8) The king was crying when the soldiers beat Miles Hendon.

**3 Make the sentences complete.**

- 1) The king was not sentenced to any punishment because \_\_\_\_\_ .
- 2) The king did not understand the meaning of the sentence because \_\_\_\_\_ .
- 3) The king ran up to the soldier because \_\_\_\_\_ .
- 4) The officer ordered a soldier to give the king a lash or two because \_\_\_\_\_ .
- 5) Sir Hugh rode up to the square because \_\_\_\_\_ .
- 6) The king did not move in the hands of the soldier because \_\_\_\_\_ .
- 7) Miles Hendon took the king's lashes because \_\_\_\_\_ .

8) The king turned his face away from Miles Hendon because \_\_\_\_\_ .

**4 Answer the following questions.**

- 1) What sort of punishment was Miles Hendon sentenced to?
- 2) Was the king sentenced to any punishment, too?
- 3) Did the king understand the meaning of the punishment?
- 4) What did he shout to the officer?
- 5) Who else wanted to see Miles Hendon's punishment?
- 6) Was the king frightened when the soldier caught him?
- 7) What did Miles Hendon tell the soldier?
- 8) How was Miles Hendon punished?
- 9) How was the king feeling?

### **Working with Vocabulary and Grammar**

**1 Say what the italicized words mean.**

- 1) The day of *the trial* came.
- 2) Miles Hendon made *a sacrifice* to save the king.
- 3) The king was not sentenced to any *punishment*.
- 4) They *let him off* with a lecture *for being in such a bad company*.
- 5) The officer wanted *to teach* the king *a good lesson*.
- 6) "Five or six *lashes* will teach him a better lesson," said Sir Hugh.

7) His *jacket* was taken off, and he was beaten with a *lash*.

2 Complete the following sentences with the words from the box.

foolish
beautiful
helpless
young
angry
mad
little
poor
cruel

- 1) Sir Hugh rode up on a \_\_\_\_\_ horse to see his brother's punishment.
- 2) The king was too \_\_\_\_\_ to be punished.
- 3) The king was so \_\_\_\_\_ that he ran up to the officer and shouted at him.
- 4) The officer did not pay attention to the king's \_\_\_\_\_ words.
- 5) Everybody believed that Edward was \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6) Many \_\_\_\_\_ people were sentenced to be hanged.
- 7) Edward began to understand how \_\_\_\_\_ were the laws of England.
- 8) Edward knew how \_\_\_\_\_ he was, and did not even try to move.
- 9) Sir Hugh did not pay much attention to a \_\_\_\_\_ beggar, and let him go.

3 Fill in the missing prepositions.

\_\_\_\_\_ the day \_\_\_\_\_ the trial there was a big crowd \_\_\_\_\_ the square. Miles Hendon was sitting \_\_\_\_\_ the pillory, and the crowd was mocking \_\_\_\_\_ him. Full \_\_\_\_\_ anger the king ran \_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_ the officer and ordered him to let his servant go. Nobody took any attention \_\_\_\_\_ his foolish words. But he was taught a lesson \_\_\_\_\_ saying them. Sir Hugh who had ridden \_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_ a beautiful horse ordered a soldier to give five or six lashes \_\_\_\_\_ the young beggar. Miles Hendon took the king's lashes \_\_\_\_\_ himself. He was taken \_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_ the pillory and beaten \_\_\_\_\_ the lash. It was too much \_\_\_\_\_ the king to see it. He turned \_\_\_\_\_ not to show his tears running \_\_\_\_\_ his cheeks.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make questions, and answer them.

- 1) crowd, at, the, mocking, why, was, Miles Hendon?
- 2) officer, lesson, a, the, want, who, good, teach, did, to?
- 3) helpless, soldier's, who, in, hands, was, the?
- 4) see, king, the, soldier, did, young, how, was, the?
- 5) Edward, Miles Hendon, to, want, tears, that, cheeks, running, see, down, did, the, were, his, not?



### Discussing the Text

1 Say why:

- 1) Miles Hendon was sentenced to the punishment.
- 2) the king was not sentenced to any punishment.

- 3) the king got angry.
- 4) the officer wanted to teach the king a good lesson.
- 5) Sir Hugh arrived at the place of punishment.
- 6) the king did not move when the soldier caught him.
- 7) Miles Hendon took the king's lashes for himself.
- 8) the king was crying.
- 9) the king turned his face away from Miles Hendon.

**2 Prove that:**

- 1) Edward liked Miles Hendon and was sorry for him.
- 2) Miles Hendon was a gentleman.
- 3) Sir Hugh was a dishonest man.
- 4) Edward was a proud boy.

**3 Add more details to the following:**

- 1) The king came to the square.
- 2) Sir Hugh arrived at the square.
- 3) The king did not move.
- 4) Miles Hendon turned to the soldier.
- 5) They took Miles out of the pillory.

**4 Imagine that you are:**

- **Edward.** Say a) what you saw on the square; b) what you felt during the trial, and when Miles was beaten.
- **Miles Hendon.** Say a) what you felt when you were sitting in the pillory; b) when you were beaten with lashes.

- **Sir Hugh.** Say what you felt during the trial.
- **The officer** at whom the king shouted. Say why you wanted to teach him a lesson.

**5 Act out the talk between:**

- Edward and the officer.
- Miles Hendon and the soldier.

**6 What is your opinion?**

- 1) "Don't pay any attention to him. He is mad," shouted Miles Hendon to the officer. Why do you think Miles Hendon called the boy mad? Did he believe that the boy was mad? What do you think?
- 2) Do you think it was a sacrifice of Miles Hendon to take the king's lashes for himself?

## Chapter XXIX TO LONDON

When Hendon's punishment was over, he and Edward were ordered<sup>1</sup> to leave the town at once.

"What shall I do? Where shall we go?" thought Miles. "Where can I find help? Perhaps the best thing to do will be to go to London and beg for justice from the young king."

He turned to Edward and said:

---

<sup>1</sup> **he and Edward were ordered** — ему и Эдуарду было приказано

“I have forgotten to ask your majesty where we shall go now. What will your command be?”

“To London!”

Hendon was glad to hear this command, but surprised at it too.

So they started for London. About 10 o'clock on the night of the 19th of February they came to London Bridge. They found themselves in a crowd of drunken people. Those people were already beginning to celebrate the Coronation Day — the 20th of February.

London streets were beautifully decorated with flags and banners for the coronation of Edward VI.

Everybody shouted and sang and danced. Some drunken men started a fight, and soon Hendon and the king lost each other in the crowd.

And so we leave them and come back to the mock king Tom Canty.

When we saw him last he was just beginning to see good things in his new life. He lost his fears. He got all information about the court life from the whipping-boy. He ordered Lady Elizabeth and Lady Jane Grey to visit him when he wanted to play or talk. He allowed them to kiss his hand when they were leaving. It became pleasant for him to go to dinner with a crowd of lords around him; he liked to hear voices down the long corridors: “Way for the King!”

Oh, happy Tom Canty of Offal Court!

He was still good-hearted and he made war upon cruel English laws.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> he made war upon cruel English laws — он вел войну с жестокими английскими законами

Did Tom Canty ever feel worried about the poor little prince who had run out to punish the cruel soldier? He had run out for a minute and disappeared. Yes, his first royal days and nights were full of worry and sad thoughts about the prince. But as time went on and the prince did not come back, Tom began to forget about him. The same thing can be said about his mother and sisters. At first he thought of them quite often and he felt sad without them. But little by little he began to forget them too.

On the night of the 19th of February Tom Canty was quietly sleeping in his rich bed in the palace. At the same hour, Edward, the true king, cold and hungry, dressed in rags, was standing in the crowd. The people were watching with great interest the workmen who walked in and out of Westminster Abbey.<sup>1</sup> Those workmen were making the last preparations for the royal coronation.

## Activities

### ? *Checking Comprehension*

#### 1 **Make the right choice.**

- 1) Miles Hendon and the king were ordered to leave
  - a) Hendon Hall forever
  - b) the square immediately
  - c) the town at once

<sup>1</sup> who walked in and out of Westminster Abbey [ˈæbi] — которые то входили в Вестминстерское аббатство, то выходили из него



- 2) The two friends started for
  - a) London
  - b) some new place
  - c) the nearest village
- 3) They came to London Bridge
  - a) at 10 o'clock on the night of the 19<sup>th</sup> of February
  - b) at midnight of the 19<sup>th</sup> of February
  - c) late at night of the 19<sup>th</sup> of February
- 4) Miles Hendon and Edward found themselves in a crowd of
  - a) singing people
  - b) drunken people
  - c) shouting people
- 5) Tom Canty found his new life in the palace very
  - a) interesting
  - b) pleasant
  - c) happy
- 6) Tom made war upon cruel
  - a) lords of England
  - b) people of England
  - c) laws of England
- 7) On the night of the nineteenth of February Tom was
  - a) dreaming in his rich bed in the palace
  - b) sleeping in his rich bed in the palace
  - c) thinking about his mother and sisters
- 8) On the same night the true king Edward VI was
  - a) walking to London

- b) sleeping on the ground
- c) standing in the crowd

**2 Put the sentences in the right order.**

- 1) Tom began to see good things in his new life.
- 2) Soon they found themselves in a crowd of drunken people.
- 3) The two friends were ordered to leave the town at once.
- 4) The streets were beautifully decorated for the coronation.
- 5) Walking in the crowds of shouting people they lost each other.
- 6) So they started for London.
- 7) The whipping-boy gave him useful information about the court life.
- 8) Tom began to forget about that little prince who ran out to punish the soldier.
- 9) The true king was cold, and hungry, and homeless.
- 10) Everything was almost ready for the coronation.
- 11) He seldom thought of his mother and sisters.

**3 Say whether the statement is true or false. Correct the false one.**

- 1) Miles Hendon did not know where to go.
- 2) Miles Hendon decided to go to London and beg for justice from the young king.
- 3) London began to celebrate the Coronation Day.
- 4) That night in London was very dark.

- 5) Edward lost Miles Hendon in the crowd of drunken people.
- 6) Tom began enjoying his life in the palace.
- 7) He was not that kind as he had been in Offal Court.
- 8) Tom never thought of the poor little prince who had run out to punish the soldier.
- 9) He began to forget his mother and sisters, too.
- 10) On the night before the coronation Tom couldn't sleep well.
- 11) The true king, Edward, was sleeping on the ground, cold and hungry.
- 12) The last preparations for the coronation had been finished.

**4 Answer the following questions.**

- 1) Where did Miles Hendon and Edward decide to go?
- 2) What was the date when they came to London Bridge?
- 3) What event did the people of London begin to celebrate?
- 4) How did Miles Hendon and Edward lose each other?
- 5) What was Tom's life like in the royal palace?
- 6) Did Tom act as a king?
- 7) Was Tom worried about the little prince?
- 8) Was he worried about his mother and sisters?
- 9) Where was the true king on the night before the coronation?
- 10) What is Westminster Abbey famous for?

- 11) What were the people watching near Westminster Abbey?

 **Working with Vocabulary and Grammar**

**1 Say what the italicized words mean.**

- 1) Miles Hendon decided to go to London and *beg for justice* from the young king.
- 2) *Little by little* he began to forget them.
- 3) At the same time *the true king* was standing in the crowd.

**2 Fill in the missing prepositions.**

Miles Hendon thought \_\_\_\_ going \_\_\_\_ London to beg \_\_\_\_ justice \_\_\_\_ the young king. He was surprised \_\_\_\_ Edward's words who was thinking \_\_\_\_ the same. So they started \_\_\_\_ London. They approached London Bridge \_\_\_\_ the 19<sup>th</sup> \_\_\_\_ February, and soon they lost each other \_\_\_\_ a crowd \_\_\_\_ drunken people. \_\_\_\_ the same hour, when cold and hungry Edward was watching \_\_\_\_ great interest the workmen \_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ Westminster Abbey making the last preparations \_\_\_\_ the coronation, Tom was quietly sleeping \_\_\_\_ his warm bed \_\_\_\_ the palace.

**3 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense form.**

Tom (begin) to see good things in his new life. The whipping-boy (appear) to be very useful for Tom. He (give) Tom all the necessary information about the

court life. He (play) and (talk) to the ladies when he (want), they (kiss) his hands and (bow) to him. Everybody (take) care of him. It (be) a happy life. Tom (begin) to forget about the little prince who (run) out and (disappear). He (not to think) about his mother and sisters. His life (change) completely.

### **Discussing the Text**

#### **1 Say why:**

- 1) Edward and Miles Hendon started for London.
- 2) there were crowds of drunken people in London.
- 3) the streets were beautifully decorated with flags and banners.
- 4) Edward and Miles Hendon lost each other.
- 5) Tom began to like his life in the palace.
- 6) Tom began to forget the little prince and his family.
- 7) Edward was cold and hungry.
- 8) the workmen were very busy.

#### **2 Prove that:**

- 1) Miles Hendon took Edward seriously for the king of the kingdom of dreams.
- 2) Tom liked his life in the palace.

#### **3 Add more details to the following:**

- 1) They found themselves in a crowd of drunken people.

- 2) Life in the palace seemed pleasant to him.
- 3) Poor Edward was cold and hungry.

#### **4 Imagine that you are:**

- **Miles Hendon.** Say how you lost the king.
- **Edward.** Say what you saw in London that night.
- **Tom.** Say what your life was like in the palace.

#### **5 Act out the talk between:**

- 1) Miles Hendon and Edward.
- 2) Tom Canty and you (ask him questions about his new life, what he thinks about that little prince, about his family).

#### **6 What is your opinion?**

How do you think Tom as a king made war upon cruel English laws?



## Chapter XXX THE CORONATION PROCESSION

Old England royal processions usually took place before the coronation of a new king.

And so on the morning of the 20th of February Tom Canty, richly dressed, led the procession on a beautiful white horse. His 'uncle', the Lord Protector, and other great lords, also on horses, followed him.

From time to time<sup>1</sup> a cry rose from the crowd of people who were watching the procession:

"Long live Edward, King of England!"

<sup>1</sup> **From time to time** — Время от времени

And in answer to that Tom Canty threw bright new pennies into the crowd. The procession moved on and on. Tom turned his happy young face to the left and to the right and every time when the crowd shouted: "Long live Edward, King of England!" he said with a happy smile, "I thank you with all my heart!"

Then among the people he saw two of his ragged comrades from Offal Court. One of them had always played the role of the lord high admiral in Tom's mock court.<sup>1</sup> The other boy had always acted the first lord of the bedchamber. Tom felt sorry they did not know that he, their mock king, had become a real king! At the same time Tom's heart was full of joy and happiness. "This is all for me, for *me*?" he said to himself.

This thought made the mock king's cheeks burn, his eyes were bright. Suddenly, just at the moment when he was going to raise his hand and throw some bright pennies into the crowd, he saw a pale surprised face of a woman in the crowd. It was his mother's face.

Up flew his hand<sup>2</sup> and he quickly covered his eyes with the back of his hand — as he always did when he was surprised or frightened.

In a moment she pushed her way through the crowd and past the guards<sup>3</sup> and was at his horse's side. She took his foot in her hands, she covered it with kisses, she cried:

"Oh, my dear child, my dear child!"

<sup>1</sup> **mock court** — зд. потешный королевский двор

<sup>2</sup> **Up flew his hand** — Рука его быстро поднялась

<sup>3</sup> **In a moment she had pushed her way through the crowd and past the guards** — В одно мгновение она протолкалась через толпу и стражу

She lifted towards him her face which was changed now with joy and love.

Tom was just going to say, "I do not know you, woman," when an officer of the king's Guard<sup>1</sup> dragged her away from Tom's horse and she disappeared in the crowd. When she turned her face to him to see him for the last time, it was so sad and unhappy that a shame fell upon him.<sup>2</sup> The shame was so great that it killed all his joy and all his pride. They fell away from him like old rags.

The procession moved on and on. Tom's heart was full of shame and sadness now. He neither saw nor heard anything. He rode with bowed head and sad eyes.

"Long live Edward the Sixth, King of England!"

But there was no answer from the king any longer. He did not even hear those cries. He heard only his own voice repeating the words: "I do not know you, woman!"

Little by little the people began to see the change in him.

Lord Protector Hertford also saw it. He rode up to Tom's horse, took off his hat and said in a low voice:

"Your majesty, you must not dream now. The people see your bowed head and your sad eyes. Lift up your face and smile upon the people."

Tom obeyed and tried to smile. But his smile had no heart in it.<sup>3</sup> His mother's sad face was before him. The Lord Protector said to him again:

<sup>1</sup> **an officer of the king's Guard** — телохранитель королевской гвардии

<sup>2</sup> **a shame fell upon him** — ему стало очень стыдно

<sup>3</sup> **his smile had no heart in it** — его улыбка была неестественной

"Your majesty! The eyes of the world are upon you. What has made you so sad? Is it possible that it was that dirty pauper..."

Tom turned to him and said in a dead voice:

"She was my mother!"

"My god," groaned the Protector as he rode away. "He is mad again!"

## Activities

### ? *Checking Comprehension*

#### 1 **Make up the right choice.**

- 1) In old England royal processions happened
  - a) on the day of the coronation
  - b) before the coronation
  - c) after the coronation
- 2) In an answer to the cries from the crowd Tom threw
  - a) bright flowers into the crowd
  - b) new farthings into the crowd
  - c) bright new pennies into the crowd
- 3) Tom was riding on a beautiful white horse
  - a) among the high lords
  - b) at the head of high lords
  - c) behind the high lords
- 4) Among the people watching the royal procession Tom saw
  - a) some of his ragged comrades

- b) one of his ragged comrades
  - c) two of his ragged comrades
- 5) In the crowd Tom saw his mother's
- a) frightened face
  - b) happy face
  - c) pale and surprised face
- 6) In a moment she was next to his horse and
- a) kissed his foot
  - b) kissed his hands
  - c) touched his beautiful shoe
- 7) When she turned her face to him to see him for the last time it was
- a) sad and unhappy
  - b) full of love
  - c) all in tears
- 8) When his mother disappeared in the crowd Tom
- a) felt shame
  - b) was sorry
  - c) was glad
- 9) Tom could not smile to the crowd any longer. His mother's
- a) eyes were before him
  - b) rags were before him
  - c) face was before him
- 10) Lord Protector thought that Tom was
- a) sick
  - b) tired
  - c) mad again

**2 Say whether the statement is true or false. Correct the false one.**

- 1) Tom followed the procession on a beautiful white horse.
- 2) He threw coins into the crowd.
- 3) In the crowd he saw his good friends from Offal Court.
- 4) When Tom saw his mother's face in the crowd he got frightened.
- 5) His mother's face was full of joy and love when she looked at Tom.
- 6) But Tom told his mother that he did not know her.
- 7) His heart was full of fear now.
- 8) But the people did not notice any change in Tom.
- 9) Tom tried to smile again, but it was a very sad smile.
- 10) When Tom said that the dirty pauper was his mother Lord Hertford thought that Tom was sick.

**3 Put the sentences in the right order.**

- 1) Tom felt sorry that his comrades from Offal Court did not see him.
- 2) His heart was full of joy and happiness.
- 3) Now his heart was full of shame and sadness.
- 4) He saw his mother in the crowd.
- 5) His head was bowed, and his eyes were sad.
- 6) She pushed her way through the guards, and to his horse.

- 7) Tom led the procession on a beautiful white horse.
- 8) But the king's guard dragged her away from his horse.
- 9) Her face was so sad that Tom felt shame.
- 10) He did not see or hear anything.

**4 Answer the following questions.**

- 1) What did the royal procession look like?
- 2) What did the crowd cry?
- 3) How was Tom feeling at those moments?
- 4) Whose faces did he see in the crowd?
- 5) What made his cheeks burn and his eyes bright?
- 6) What was Tom's immediate reaction, when he saw his mother in the crowd?
- 7) What did his mother do?
- 8) Did Tom tell her "I don't know you, woman"?
- 9) How did his mother look at that moment?
- 10) Could Tom see or hear anything then?
- 11) Who noticed the change in Tom?
- 12) What made Lord Hertford think that the king was mad again?

 **Working with Vocabulary and Grammar**

**1 Say what the italicized words mean.**

- 1) In a moment she *pushed her way through* the crowd and was at his *horse's side*.
- 2) The shame was so great that it killed all his *pride*.
- 3) "*The eyes of the world are upon you,*" said the Lord Protector.
- 4) "My God," *groaned* the Protector *as he rode away*.

**2 Match the adjectives with the suitable nouns. Use them to describe the events from the story.**

- |              |               |
|--------------|---------------|
| 1) royal     | a) shame      |
| 2) white     | b) comrades   |
| 3) happy     | c) procession |
| 4) ragged    | d) head       |
| 5) real      | e) voice      |
| 6) surprised | f) rags       |
| 7) great     | g) king       |
| 8) old       | h) eyes       |
| 9) bowed     | i) pauper     |
| 10) sad      | j) horse      |
| 11) dirty    | k) smile      |
| 12) dead     | l) face       |

**3 Complete the sentences with the words from the box.**

joy  
happiness  
love  
shame  
sadness  
pride

- 1) His \_\_\_\_\_ was so great that his cheeks burned.
- 2) Tom went on riding on his beautiful horse, trying to smile upon the people, but \_\_\_\_\_ filled his heart, and his mother's eyes full of \_\_\_\_\_ were before him.

- 3) He saw his ragged comrades in the crowd, and wanted them to know about his great \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4) He saw her face full of \_\_\_\_\_ for him.

### **Discussing the Text**

#### **1 Say why:**

- 1) Tom Canty was richly dressed on the 20<sup>th</sup> of February.
- 2) Tom said with a happy smile, "I thank you with all my heart."
- 3) Tom's heart was full of joy and happiness.
- 4) he covered his eyes with the back of his hand.
- 5) his shame was that great.
- 6) there was a great change in Tom.
- 7) the Lord Protector thought that Tom was mad again.

#### **2 Prove that:**

- 1) Tom was happy and proud.
- 2) Tom remembered his comrades from Offal Court.
- 3) his old manners were with him.
- 4) Tom loved his mother.

#### **3 Add more details to the following:**

- 1) Tom turned his happy young face to the left and to the right.
- 2) He saw his ragged comrades from Offal Court.
- 3) He raised his hand to throw some bright pennies into the crowd.

- 4) Her face was so sad and unhappy.
- 5) Tom did not hear or see anything.
- 6) The Lord Protector rode up to Tom's horse.

#### **4 Imagine that you are:**

- Tom
- one of Tom's comrades from Offal Court
- Lord Protector Hertford
- Tom's mother.

Describe the coronation procession and your feelings.

#### **5 Act out the talk between:**

Tom and the Lord Protector.

#### **6 What is your opinion?**

When Tom's mother kissed his foot her face was full of joy and love.

When she was dragged away back to the crowd, and she turned her face to see him for the last time, her face was sad and unhappy. What do you think about this change?

## **Chapter XXXI CORONATION DAY**

When the coronation procession was over, people filled the Westminster Abbey to watch the coronation ceremony. Great lords and ladies gathered in the Abbey, waiting for the young king. At a signal, the sounds of



the anthem filled the Abbey.<sup>1</sup> Tom Canty, dressed in a beautiful long mantle, appeared in the door and stepped upon the platform. Then he was led to the throne, and the ceremony began.

As the ceremony of the coronation went on, Tom Canty grew very pale and sadness filled his heart. At last the Archbishop of Canterbury<sup>2</sup> lifted up the crown of England and held it out over the trembling mock king's head.

At this moment something strange happened. A boy clothed in rags came up to the platform. He raised his hand and cried:

“Do not put the crown of England on his head! I am the king!”

In a moment several hands were laid upon the boy and they pulled the boy from the platform. But at the same moment Tom Canty, in his royal mantle, made a quick step forward and cried out in an angry voice:

“Let him go and don't touch him, he *is* the king!”

Surprise and panic made the people rise in their places and look attentively at the two boys. Everybody saw that they looked very much alike.

The Lord Protector was as surprised as all other people,<sup>3</sup> but he quickly came to himself<sup>4</sup> and said loudly:

---

<sup>1</sup> At a signal, the sounds of the anthem [æпθэм] filled [fild] the Abbey — По сигналу звуки гимна наполнили аббатство

<sup>2</sup> the Archbishop of Canterbury — Архиепископ Кентерберийский (глава англиканской церкви, назначается королем)

<sup>3</sup> as surprised as all other people — так же удивлен, как и все остальные

<sup>4</sup> but he quickly came to himself — но он быстро пришел в себя

“Pay no attention to the words of his majesty. He is ill again. Take the beggar...!”

But the mock king stepped forward and repeated:

“Do not touch him, he is the king!”

Silence fell upon the hall. Nobody moved, nobody spoke, nobody knew what to say or what to do.

The boy in rags stepped upon the platform, and the mock king ran with a glad face to meet him. He fell on his knees before him and said:

“Oh, my lord, the king, let poor Tom Canty be the first to welcome you!”

The Lord Protector's eyes fell upon the stranger's face and he also saw that the boys looked quite alike.

The Lord Protector thought a moment or two, then he said:

If you please,<sup>1</sup> sir, I wish to ask you a few questions.

“I will answer them, my lord,” the ragged boy answered.

The Lord Protector asked him many questions about the palace, the court, about the dead King Henry VIII and about the prince and the princesses. The lad answered then correctly. He described the rooms in the palace, the dead king's apartments and the apartments of the Prince of Wales.

It was strange; it was wonderful. Nobody could explain it. There was no explanation for it.

Tom Canty's hopes began to rise, but the Lord Protector shook his head and said:

---

<sup>1</sup> If you please — Пожалуйста

“It is true, it is most wonderful. But it is not more than our lord the king can do.<sup>1</sup> It doesn’t prove anything.”

He still called Tom Canty ‘king’ and this made Tom very sad. He felt that he was losing all hopes to go back home.

## Activities

### ? *Checking Comprehension*

#### 1 Who said:

- 1) “Do not put the crown of England on his head.”
- 2) “Let him go, and don’t touch him.”
- 3) “Pay no attention to the words of his majesty.”
- 4) “Oh, my lord, the king.”
- 5) “I wish to ask you a few questions.”
- 6) “I will answer them, my lord.”
- 7) “It doesn’t prove anything.”

#### 2 Say who:

- 1) gathered in the Westminster Abbey.
- 2) appeared in the door and stepped upon the platform.
- 3) held the crown over the king’s head.
- 4) else came up to the platform.

---

<sup>1</sup> But it is not more than our lord the king can do — Но то же может сказать и наш король

- 5) looked very much alike.
- 6) said loudly not to pay attention to the words of his majesty.
- 7) did not know what to do.
- 8) fell on his knees before Edward.
- 9) was glad during the ceremony.
- 10) saw that the boys looked alike.
- 11) asked questions.
- 12) answered the questions.
- 13) did not believe Edward.
- 14) was losing his hopes.

#### 3 Say whether the statement is true or false. Correct the false one.

- 1) The ceremony of the coronation began with the sounds of the anthem.
- 2) Tom Canty was happy to become the king of England.
- 3) The boy who came up to the platform looked very strange.
- 4) The people in the Abbey were in panic.
- 5) The Lord Protector ordered the guards to throw away the pauper.
- 6) It was only Tom Canty who was not in panic.
- 7) The Lord Protector decided to give the pauper a trial.
- 8) Everybody was surprised at the answers of the poor lad.
- 9) Tom was glad that he could go back home.
- 10) The Lord Protector was the first to believe the poor lad.

**4 Put the sentences in the right order.**

- 1) The Lord Protector saw that the boys looked alike.
- 2) Nobody knew what to say or what to do.
- 3) Tom Canty made a quick step forward.
- 4) The Archbishop of Canterbury held the crown out over Tom's head.
- 5) The sounds of the anthem filled the Abbey.
- 6) Tom was led to the throne.
- 7) Tom Canty with a glad face met the king.
- 8) The Lord Protector asked the ragged boy many questions.
- 9) The Lord Protector quickly came to himself.
- 10) A boy clothed in rags came up to the platform.

**5 Answer the following questions.**

- 1) Where did the coronation procession take place?
- 2) How was Tom Canty dressed?
- 3) What did the Archbishop of Canterbury hold out over Tom's head?
- 4) What strange thing happened at that moment?
- 5) Who pulled the ragged boy from the platform?
- 6) Who stopped the guards?
- 7) What did all the people see when they looked attentively at the boys?
- 8) Tom welcomed the true king, didn't he?
- 9) How did he welcome him?
- 10) Was it difficult for the Lord Protector to believe that the ragged boy was a true king?
- 11) What did the Lord Protector ask the ragged boy about?
- 12) How did the ragged boy answer all the questions?

- 13) Did the Lord Protector believe the ragged boy or did he have another trial for him?

 **Working with Vocabulary and Grammar**

**1 Say what the italicized words mean.**

- 1) Tom Canty was dressed in a beautiful long *mantle*.
- 2) The Archbishop of Canterbury *held out* the crown over Tom's head.
- 3) *Silence fell upon* the hall.
- 4) All the people saw that the boys *looked* very much *alike*.
- 5) Tom felt that he was *losing all hopes* to go back home.

**2 a) Match the words in two columns. Use them in situations from the story.**

- |                        |                            |
|------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1) to fill             | a) the throne              |
| 2) to watch            | b) oneself                 |
| 3) to gather           | c) the platform            |
| 4) to wait for         | d) in the door             |
| 5) to appear           | e) from the platform       |
| 6) to step upon        | f) hands upon somebody     |
| 7) to lead to          | g) alike                   |
| 8) to hold out         | h) all hopes               |
| 9) to lay              | i) the young king          |
| 10) to pull away       | j) in the Abbey            |
| 11) to come to         | k) the coronation          |
| 12) to describe king's | l) the crown over the head |
| 13) to lose            | m) the rooms in the palace |
| 14) to look            | n) the Abbey               |

**b) Match the verbs with the adverbs. Use them in the situations from the story.**

- |                       |                |
|-----------------------|----------------|
| 1) to listen to       | a) quickly     |
| 2) to say             | b) correctly   |
| 3) to dress           | c) beautifully |
| 4) to run             | d) attentively |
| 5) to answer          | e) quickly     |
| 6) to come to oneself | f) loudly      |

**3 Fill in the missing prepositions.**

Great lords and ladies gathered \_\_\_\_\_ the Abbey. They were waiting \_\_\_\_\_ the king. When the sounds \_\_\_\_\_ the anthem filled the Abbey, Tom Canty, dressed \_\_\_\_\_ a beautiful long mantle, appeared \_\_\_\_\_ the door and stepped \_\_\_\_\_ the platform. The Archbishop \_\_\_\_\_ Canterbury was going to put the crown \_\_\_\_\_ England \_\_\_\_\_ Tom's head, when a boy clothed \_\_\_\_\_ rags came \_\_\_\_\_ the platform, and said that he was the king. Tom ran \_\_\_\_\_ a glad face to meet him. But nobody believed that the boy \_\_\_\_\_ rags was the king. Silence fell \_\_\_\_\_ the hall. The Lord Protector was the first who came \_\_\_\_\_ himself, and he asked the ragged boy a lot \_\_\_\_\_ questions \_\_\_\_\_ everything and everybody \_\_\_\_\_ the palace. All were surprised \_\_\_\_\_ his correct answers. But the Lord Protector stepped \_\_\_\_\_ and said that his answers did not prove anything.

**4 Report the sentences in indirect speech.**

- 1) "Do not put the Crown of England on his head! I am the king!" cried the boy.

- 2) "Let him go and don't touch him, he is the king!" Tom cried out in an angry voice.
- 3) "Pay no attention to the words of his majesty. He is ill again," said the Lord Protector loudly.
- 4) "Let poor Tom Canty be the first to welcome you," said Tom.
- 5) "It doesn't prove anything," said the Lord Protector.

 **Discussing the Text**

**1 Say why:**

- 1) a lot of people gathered in the Abbey.
- 2) Tom Canty did not look happy at the coronation.
- 3) Tom cried out not to touch the ragged boy.
- 4) everybody was surprised and in a panic.
- 5) the Lord Protector said that the king was ill again.
- 6) Tom fell on his knees before the poor lad.
- 7) the Lord Protector asked the poor lad a lot of questions.
- 8) the poor lad knew everything and everybody in the palace.
- 9) Tom Canty was sad when the coronation began, then he was glad and happy, and then again he looked very sad.

**2 Prove that:**

- 1) the coronation did not make Tom happy.

- 2) the Lord Protector was a careful man.
- 3) Tom has changed.

**3 Add more details to the following:**

- 1) The coronation procession went on.
- 2) Tom Canty made a quick step forward.
- 3) Silence fell upon the hall.
- 4) The Lord Protector thought for a moment.
- 5) The Lord Protector asked the lad many questions.

**4 Imagine that you are:**

- Tom Canty
- the ragged boy
- the Lord Protector
- the Archbishop of Canterbury.

Describe the coronation as you see it.

**5 Act out the talk between:**

- Tom Canty and the ragged boy.
- The Lord Protector and the ragged boy.

**6 What is your opinion?**

- 1) Was it strange or wonderful that the lad answered all the questions that he was asked?
- 2) Do you think Tom Canty has changed after his life in the palace as a king? Give reasons for your answer.

## Chapter XXXII WHICH OF THEM IS THE KING?

The Lord Protector thought some time, then he turned to the stranger and said:

“I wish to ask you a question. If you answer it correctly, then you are the king. If you can’t answer it, you will be arrested. Your answer will decide everything. The question is this: where does the Great Seal lie? Only the Prince of Wales can answer it. Only he can know it.”

“It is not difficult to answer this question,” answered the lad. Then he turned and gave this command:

“My lord St. John, go to my cabinet in the palace, and in the left-hand wall you will find a nail-head.<sup>1</sup> Press upon it, and the wall will open a little. The first thing you will see in the opening<sup>2</sup> will be the Great Seal. Bring it here.”

Tom Canty looked at Lord St. John and said:

“Why do you not go? Have you not heard the king’s command? Go!”

Lord St. John bowed and left. In a few minutes he came back and said to Tom:

“Your majesty, the Seal is not there.”

“Throw the beggar into the street and give him a good whipping!” the Lord Protector said.

<sup>1</sup> in the left-hand wall you will find a nail-head [ˈneɪlhɛd] — в стене налево вы найдете шляпку гвоздя

<sup>2</sup> The first thing you will see in the opening — Первое, что вы увидите в отверстии

Officers of the Guard moved forward to take Edward, but Tom Canty shouted to them:

“Back! Those who touch him will die!”

The Lord Protector did not know what to do. He said to Lord St. John softly:

“Did you look well for it? It is so strange! How could such a big thing as the Seal of England disappear? A big heavy thing, a massive golden disk...”

When Tom Canty heard these words, he jumped forward and shouted:

“Wait! That is enough! Was it round and thick? Had it letters and emblems cut upon it?<sup>1</sup> Oh, now I know what this Great Seal is! And I know where it lies. I am sorry you did not describe it to me before. We could have it three weeks ago. Yes, I know where it lies; but it was not I that put it there — first.”<sup>2</sup>

“Who was it then, your majesty?” asked the Lord Protector.

“He that<sup>3</sup> stands there — the true king of England. And he will tell you himself where it lies. Then you will believe him. Think, my king, try to think well! It was the last thing which you did that day before you ran out of the palace, dressed in my rags, to punish the soldier who had bruised me.”

There was a silence for some time. Everybody looked at the stranger, who stood, with bowed head, thinking

---

<sup>1</sup> Had it letters and emblems cut upon it? — На ней были выгравированы буквы и эмблемы?

<sup>2</sup> it was not I that put it there — first — не я первый положил ее туда

<sup>3</sup> He that — Тот, кто

hard. Moment after moment passed — the moments built themselves into minutes.<sup>1</sup> Still the boy stood silently and said no word.

At last he lifted his head, shook it slowly and said in trembling voice:

“I do not remember where I put it.”

“Oh, my king,” cried Tom Canty in a panic. “Wait! Think! Try to remember! Listen to what I say. I am going to bring that morning back again, every little thing, just as it happened. We talked — I told you about my sisters, Nan and Bet, — ah, yes, you remember that; and I told you about my grandmother and about the games of the lads of Offal Court — yes, you remember these things too. Listen to me and you will remember everything. You gave me food and drink, and sent away the servant — ah, yes, this also you remember.”

The story was like true history. The lords and ladies listened to it with great interest. But how could they believe it? How could they believe in a friendship that had come about between a prince and a beggar?

“Then, my prince,” Tom Canty went on, “you put on my clothes and I put on yours. We stood before a mirror and were surprised to see that we were so much alike — yes, you remember that. Then you saw that the soldier had bruised my hand.

“At this your highness got very angry and ran towards the door to punish the soldier. You passed a table — the thing you call the Seal lay on that table — you took it

---

<sup>1</sup> the moments built themselves into minutes — за секундами потекли минуты

from the table and looked around as if<sup>1</sup> you wanted to find a place to hide it, then..."

"That is enough," cried the king. "I remember it now. Go, my good St. John, in an arm-piece of the armour<sup>2</sup> that hangs on the wall you will find the Seal."

"That's right, my king, that's right," cried Tom Canty. "Now the throne of England is yours. Hurry, my lord St. John, hurry!"

All the people were on their feet now. The great lords and ladies seemed mad. Nobody knew how much time passed. At last St. John appeared upon the platform and held the Great Seal high up in the air. Then such a shout went up:<sup>3</sup>

"Long live the true king!"

All rose and Tom Canty cried out:

"Now, my king, take this royal clothing back and give poor Tom, your servant, his rags again!"

The Lord Protector spoke up:

"The beggar must be thrown into prison!"<sup>4</sup>

But the new king, the true king, said:

"No, I don't allow you to do that! He will not go to prison. It is only because of him that<sup>5</sup> I got my crown back. And as for you,<sup>6</sup> my dear uncle, my Lord Protec-

<sup>1</sup> as if — как будто

<sup>2</sup> in an arm-piece ['ɑ:mpɪ:s] of the armour ['ɑ:mə] — в рукавице панциря

<sup>3</sup> Then such a shout went up — Сразу же раздался крик

<sup>4</sup> The beggar must be thrown into prison! — Этого нищего надо заточить в тюрьму!

<sup>5</sup> only because of him that — только благодаря ему

<sup>6</sup> as for you — что касается вас

tor, I am surprised you are not thankful to this poor lad. It was he who had made you a duke, wasn't it?"

Then the king turned to Tom and said kindly:

"My poor boy, how was it that you could remember where I had hidden the Great Seal when I could not remember it myself?"

"Ah, my king, that was easy, because I used it many times."

"Used it? But you could not explain where it was."

"When they asked about it I did not understand what they wanted. I did not know that the thing which I used was the Great Seal. They did not describe it, your majesty. They did not say what it was like."

"Then how did you use it?"

Tom's cheeks got red. He dropped his eyes and was silent.

"Speak up, good lad, do not be afraid of anything," said the king. "How did you use the Great Seal of England?"

"I cracked nuts with it."

## Activities

### ? *Checking Comprehension*

#### 1 Say what:

- 1) question the Lord Protector asked the true king.
- 2) was in the left-hand wall of the cabinet.
- 3) Lord St. John said when he came back from the cabinet.
- 4) was heavy, and massive, and golden.

- 5) was round and thick.
- 6) had letters and emblems cut upon it.
- 7) the Prince of Wales had given Tom before he ran out to punish the soldier.
- 8) the lords and ladies could not believe in.
- 9) the Prince of Wales and Tom stood before after they had changed their clothes.
- 10) the prince had seen on Tom's hand.
- 11) the prince had hidden.
- 12) it was that hanged on the wall in the cabinet.
- 13) Tom asked the king to give him back.
- 14) Tom used the Great Seal for.

**2 Say whether the statement is true or false. Correct the false one.**

- 1) The lad sent Lord St. John to the cabinet to bring the Great Seal.
- 2) The Lord St. John found the Great Seal very quickly.
- 3) Tom Canty let the officers punish the lad.
- 4) Tom Canty did not know what the great seal was like.
- 5) Tom remembered where the Seal was.
- 6) When Tom began telling the story of that day when the two boys had met, the lad remembered where he had put the Seal.
- 7) The Seal looked like a golden plate.
- 8) It was because of Lord St. John that the true king got his crown back.
- 9) The Great Seal was found in the opening of the wall in the cabinet.

- 10) Tom was afraid to say how he had used the Great Seal.

**3 Put the sentences in the right order.**

- 1) The Lord Protector asked Lord St. John if he had looked for the Seal well.
- 2) "Where does the Great Seal lie?" asked the Lord Protector.
- 3) "Your majesty, the Seal is not there," said the lord.
- 4) "It is not difficult to answer your question," answered the boy.
- 5) Lord St. John bowed and left.
- 6) "How could such a big thing disappear?" wondered the Lord Protector.
- 7) Tom told the lad the whole story of that day.
- 8) "I know where it lies, but it is not me who put it there," he said.
- 9) "That thing hangs on the wall in the cabinet," he added.
- 10) The Lord St. John held the Seal high up in the air.
- 11) He couldn't imagine that that was the Great Seal of England.
- 12) The Lord Protector was going to throw the beggar into prison.
- 13) "I cracked nuts with it," he said.
- 14) "How could you remember where I had hidden the Great Seal?" he asked.

**4 Answer the following questions.**

- 1) What question did the Lord Protector ask the lad?
- 2) Where did he say the Great Seal was?



- 3) Who was sent for the Seal?
- 4) Lord St. John could not find the Great Seal in the opening of the wall, could he?
- 5) What punishment was for those who would touch the lad?
- 6) What was the Great Seal of England like?
- 7) What helped Tom to know where the Great Seal was?
- 8) Did the lad remember where he had put the Seal?
- 9) Who helped the lad to remember where he had hidden the Great Seal?
- 10) How did Tom make the lad remember where the Great Seal was?
- 11) What was the reaction of the people when they knew the news?
- 12) What did the Lord Protector want to do with Tom?
- 13) Who made the Lord Protector a duke?
- 14) Was it easy for Tom to remember where the Seal was?
- 15) How did Tom use the Great Seal of England?
- 16) Was Tom afraid of punishment for using the Great Seal that way?

### Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

#### 1 Say what the italicized words mean.

- 1) *Press upon* it, and the wall will open a little.
- 2) The Great Seal of England was a big *heavy thing*, a *massive, round and thick golden disk*.

- 3) "I am going *to bring* that morning *back* again, every moment of it."
- 4) How could they *believe in* friendship that had *come about* between a prince and a beggar?
- 5) Tom *dropped his eyes*, and was silent.
- 6) "*Speak up*, good lad; don't be afraid of anything."

#### 2 Match the two halves of the sentences. More than one combination is possible.

- 1) It was Tom who...
  - 2) It was Edward who...
  - 3) It was the Lord Protector who...
  - 4) It was that soldier who...
  - 5) It was Lord St. John who...
- 
- a) ...brought the Great Seal from the cabinet.
  - b) ...was sent to find the Seal.
  - c) ...bruised Tom's hand.
  - d) ...got angry and ran out to punish the soldier.
  - e) ...wanted to throw Tom into prison.
  - f) ...gave Tom his royal clothes.
  - g) ...had hidden the Great Seal.
  - h) ...used the Great Seal to crack nuts with it.
  - i) ...had made the Lord Protector a duke.

#### 3 Make the sentences complete.

- 1) It is only because of Tom that \_\_\_\_\_
- 2) It is only because of Miles Hendon that \_\_\_\_\_
- 3) It is only because of Edward that \_\_\_\_\_
- 4) It is only because of Hugh that \_\_\_\_\_
- 5) It is only because of Tom's mother that \_\_\_\_\_

- 6) It is only because of Tom's father that \_\_\_\_\_
- 7) It is only because of Hugo that \_\_\_\_\_
- 8) It is only because of Lady Edith that \_\_\_\_\_

**4 Put verbs in brackets into the correct tense form.**

- 1) The lad (say) that it (be) not difficult for him to answer the question.
- 2) When the Lord Protector (know) that the Seal (be) not there he (order) the guards to throw the beggar into the street.
- 3) He (ask) Lord St. John if he (look for) well for it.
- 4) He (wonder) how it (be) possible for such a big thing to disappear.
- 5) Tom (try) to bring back everything that (happen) that day.
- 6) Tom (remind) the boy how he (run) out to punish the soldier who (bruise) Tom's hand.
- 7) The boy (remember) how he (take) the Seal, (look) around, and (hide) it in the arm-piece of the armour.
- 8) The new king (say) that he (not to allow) the Lord Protector to throw Tom into prison.
- 9) Tom (be afraid) that the king (get angry) when he (know) how Tom (use) the Great Seal of England.



***Discussing the Text***

**1 Say why:**

- 1) the Lord Protector asked the lad the question.

- 2) the Great Seal was not in the right place.
- 3) the Lord Protector wanted the officers to give the lad a good whipping.
- 4) Tom Canty shouted at the officers.
- 5) Tom Canty jumped forward and shouted: "Wait! That's enough!"
- 6) Tom Canty brought that morning back to the lad.
- 7) Tom Canty said: "Now the crown of England is yours."
- 8) Tom Canty did not allow the Lord Protector to throw Tom into prison.
- 9) Tom Canty could not explain where the Great Seal was.
- 10) Tom turned red and dropped his eyes when the king asked him how he had used the Seal.

**2 Prove that:**

- 1) Tom did all he could to help the true king.
- 2) the king was thankful to Tom.
- 3) the Lord Protector was a cruel man.
- 4) Tom wanted to go back home.

**3 Add more details to the following:**

- 1) "I wish to ask you a question," said the Lord Protector turning to the lad.
- 2) Officers of the Guard moved forward.
- 3) When Tom Canty heard these words he jumped forward.
- 4) "Do you remember? I told you about my sisters," Tom went on.
- 5) "You put on my clothes," Tom reminded.

- 6) All the people were on their feet now.
- 7) Tom's cheeks turned red.

**4 Imagine that you are:**

- Edward
- Tom
- the Lord Protector
- Lord St John.

Say about your feelings while all this was happening.

**5 Act out the talk between:**

The Lord Protector and Edward.  
Tom and Lord St. John.  
Tom and Edward (two talks).

**6 What is your opinion?**

Do you think Tom is different here from the Tom of Offal Court? If you think so, support it with examples from the story.



## Chapter XXXIII MILES HENDON IN THE PALACE

For hours and hours<sup>1</sup> Miles Hendon walked along the streets of London looking for Edward. He had very little money when he came to the city. Now he had no money at all, for the thieves had stolen it. He was tired and very hungry. The night passed and he was still looking for his little friend.

“Where could he go?” he thought. He could find no answer.

<sup>1</sup> For hours and hours — В течение многих часов

When day arrived at last, he had made many miles<sup>1</sup> and was tired, hungry and sleepy. He wanted some breakfast, but how could he get it if he had no money at all? He did not want to beg, he was too proud for it.

Then he found himself near Westminster and the Abbey. He decided to try and find his father's old friend Sir Humphrey Marlow. Hendon came up to the palace. To get into the palace in his clothing was simply out of the question for him.<sup>2</sup> He looked simply terrible in his dirty and ragged clothes.

Suddenly the whipping-boy passed him. When he saw Miles he said to himself, "I am sure this is the tramp that his majesty is so worried about."

Hendon came up to him and said, "You have just come out of the palace, haven't you? Do you know Sir Humphrey Marlow?"

The boy was surprised. He thought, "What? My dead father?" Then he answered, "Yes, I do."

"If so, will you ask him to come out for a minute to talk to me?"

"With pleasure," said the whipping-boy.

"Tell him I am Miles Hendon, son of Sir Richard, a friend of his."

"Wait a little, good sir," said the boy and disappeared.

Soon an officer with several soldiers passed by. The officer saw a stranger, stopped his men and ordered them

---

<sup>1</sup> he had made many miles — он исходил уже большое количество миль

<sup>2</sup> was simply out of the question for him — для него не могло быть и речи

to arrest Miles. Hendon's old and ragged clothes seemed strange to the officer. Miles was going to explain but the officer did not pay any attention to his words. Hendon was disarmed and searched.<sup>1</sup>

Nothing was found but a document.<sup>2</sup> It was a letter which Edward, his lost little friend, had written on that black day at Hendon Hall.

"Hold him, don't let him go away," the officer said to his men. "I shall carry this royal document into the palace and send it to the king!"

"This is the end," said Miles to himself. "Of course, they will hang me now. What will become of my poor lad? Nobody knows."

By and by the officer came again in a great hurry. He bowed to Miles and said:

"If you please, sir, follow me."

Hendon was brought to a large hall full of richly dressed lords and ladies. He was left standing in the middle of the hall.

The young king was sitting on the throne speaking with a lord. In a moment the king raised his head a little and Hendon saw his face.

"What is this?" thought Hendon. "The king of the kingdom of dreams<sup>3</sup> on his throne?"

He looked at the king and thought:

"Is it true, or is it a dream?"

---

<sup>1</sup> Hendon was disarmed [dis'ɑ:md] and searched [sɜ:tʃd]. — Гендона обезоружили и обыскали.

<sup>2</sup> Nothing was found but a document [ˈnʌkɪdʒmənt]. — Ничего, кроме одного документа, не было обнаружено.

<sup>3</sup> The king of the kingdom of dreams — Король из королевства грез

Then suddenly a happy idea came to him. He walked to the wall, took up a chair, brought it back, put it on the floor noisily, and sat down in it.

At once, several hands were laid on his shoulders and a voice cried out:

“Stand up, you, fool, how can you sit in the presence of the king?”

The king heard the noise and it made him raise his head. He held out his hand and cried out:

“Don’t touch him! It is his right to sit in the presence of his king.”

Then he continued:

“Ladies, lords and gentlemen! I want you to know that this is my true servant, Miles Hendon. He has saved his prince from possible death with his good sword. He took his king’s punishment upon himself and saved him from shame this way.<sup>1</sup> For all this he is a lord now and will receive much gold and land from me. More than that — he, his children and grandchildren will have the right to sit in the presence of the king of England!”

Two persons who had come from the country only that morning and had been in the hall only for five minutes, stood listening to these words. They looked at the king, then at Miles Hendon, then at the king again. They were Sir Hugh and Lady Edith. But the new lord did not see them. He was still looking at the king saying to himself:

“Oh, god! So, *this* is my mad pauper! This is he to whom I wanted to show my house<sup>2</sup> of seventy rooms and

twenty-seven servants! This is he who had worn only rags; this is he who had eaten only offal and nothing else! This is he whom I wanted to have as a small brother to help and defend. I am sorry I have no bag to hide my head in from shame!”

He dropped upon his knees and thanked the king.

When the king saw Sir Hugh, he said:

“This man has stolen the riches and the title of Miles Hendon, his brother and my good servant. Throw him into prison!”

Sir Hugh was led away.

Then Tom Canty appeared. He was richly dressed. His clothes were different from other people’s clothes.<sup>1</sup>

He came up to the throne, fell upon his knees before the king, who said:

“I know the story of these past weeks and I am well pleased with you. You had kindness and mercy. I give you the title of the King’s Ward<sup>2</sup> for it. Have you found your mother and your sisters? Good! I shall take care of them. They will not suffer from hunger any more. They will have all they will need. And you will wear a costume that nobody else must wear.<sup>3</sup> So everybody will know you by your costume and greet you as the King’s Ward.”

Tom Canty, proud and happy, rose from his knees and kissed the king’s hand. Then he hurried to his mother to tell her and Nan and Bet the good news.

<sup>1</sup> **His clothes were different from other people’s clothes** — Его одежда отличалась от одежды других

<sup>2</sup> **King’s Ward** [wɔ:d] — королевский воспитанник

<sup>3</sup> **you will wear a costume** [ˈkɒstjʊm] **that nobody else must wear** — тебе будет присвоена (особая) одежда, которой не будет ни у кого другого

<sup>1</sup> **this way** — таким образом

<sup>2</sup> **So, this is my mad pauper! This is he to whom I wanted to show my house** — Так *это* мой безумный нищий! Так это перед ним я хотел похвастаться, показывая дом

## Activities

### ? *Checking Comprehension*

#### I Say who said or thought this:

- 1) "Where could he go?"
- 2) "This is the tramp his majesty is so worried about."
- 3) "Will you ask him to come out for a minute to talk to me?"
- 4) "Hold him, don't let him go away."
- 5) "This is the end. Of course, they will hang me now."
- 6) "If you please, sir, follow me."
- 7) "The king of the kingdom of dreams on his throne."
- 8) "It is his right to sit in the presence of the king."
- 9) "I want you to know that this is my true servant."
- 10) "I am sorry I have no bag to hide my head in from shame."
- 11) "This man has stolen the riches and the title of Miles Hendon."
- 12) "You had kindness and mercy."

#### 2 Say who:

- 1) had his money stolen.
- 2) was too proud to beg.
- 3) looked terrible in his dirty and ragged clothes.
- 4) asked the whipping-boy for a favour.

- 5) disarmed and searched Miles Hendon.
- 6) was sitting in the presence of the king.
- 7) was the new lord.
- 8) was thrown into prison by the king's order.
- 9) had clothes very different from other people's clothes.
- 10) was most proud and happy.

#### 3 Say whether the statement is true or false. Correct the false one.

- 1) Miles Hendon had very little money, and he could not buy breakfast.
- 2) Miles Hendon wanted to get into the palace but the soldiers stopped him.
- 3) The whipping-boy agreed to do Miles a favour.
- 4) Miles Hendon was brought to a large hall with the throne in the middle of it.
- 5) Miles Hendon got the chair and sat down.
- 6) Miles Hendon saw Sir Hugh and Lady Edith standing by the wall.
- 7) Miles Hendon was surprised to see his mad pauper on the throne.
- 8) The king returned Hendon his riches and his title.
- 9) The king promised to take care of Tom's family.
- 10) Tom was proud to be the King's Ward.

#### 4 Answer the following questions.

- 1) How long did Miles Hendon look for Edward that night?
- 2) Could Hendon have breakfast anywhere?
- 3) How did Hendon look when he got to the palace?

- 4) What favour did Hendon ask the whipping-boy to do for him?
- 5) Who ordered the soldiers to arrest Miles Hendon?
- 6) Did the soldiers find anything on Miles Hendon? If yes, what was it?
- 7) Where was Miles Hendon brought?
- 8) What did Miles see in the hall where he had been brought?
- 9) What happy idea came to Miles Hendon?
- 10) What rights was Miles given by the king?
- 11) What did Miles feel when he saw his little mad pauper on the throne?
- 12) How did Tom look when he appeared in the hall?
- 13) What title did Tom get from the king?
- 14) What was Tom feeling?
- 15) How did the king thank Tom for his kindness and mercy?

### Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

#### 1 Say what the italicized words mean.

- 1) "Tell him I am Miles Hendon, son of Sir Richard, *a friend of his*."
- 2) "*Hold him*, don't let him go away."
- 3) "I shall *carry* this 'royal' document into the palace."
- 4) "What *will become of* my poor lad?"
- 5) *By and by* the officer came again in a great hurry.
- 6) He *was left* standing in the middle of the hall.

- 7) "This man has stolen *the riches* and *the title* of Miles Hendon."
- 8) "Everybody *will greet* you as the King's Ward."
- 9) Tom Canty, proud and happy, *rose* from his knees.

#### 2 Complete the sentences with the words from the box.

standing thanking speaking carrying looking listening thinking passing
---

- 1) Miles Hendon walked miles and miles \_\_\_\_\_ for Edward.
- 2) The officer left him \_\_\_\_\_ in the middle of the hall.
- 3) His mad pauper was sitting on the throne \_\_\_\_\_ with a lord.
- 4) Sir Hugh and Lady Edith stood by the wall \_\_\_\_\_ to the king.
- 5) Miles Hendon did not see them \_\_\_\_\_ about the king.
- 6) He dropped upon his knee \_\_\_\_\_ the king.
- 7) The officer hurried to the palace \_\_\_\_\_ the royal 'document'.
- 8) An officer \_\_\_\_\_ by saw a ragged stranger.

**3 Match the two halves of the sentence.**

- 1) Miles Hendon was too proud...
- 2) His clothes were too dirty and ragged...
- 3) Edward looked too strange...
- 4) Miles Hendon was too busy thinking...
- 5) The news was too good...
- 6) Tom's clothes were too different from others'...
- 7) He was too hungry and tired...
- 8) Miles Hendon looked too strange...

- a) ...to go on walking.
- b) ...to allow him into the palace.
- c) ...to beg for food.
- d) ...to get into the palace.
- e) ...not to notice it.
- f) ...to believe that he was a true king.
- g) ...not to tell it to the family.
- h) ...to see his dishonest brother.

**4 Complete the sentences with the words from the box. Use each one only once.**

when for and while but
------------------------------------

- 1) A happy idea came into his head \_\_\_\_\_ he was standing in the hall.
- 2) \_\_\_\_\_ he came to the city he had very little money.

- 3) Miles wanted to explain to him everything \_\_\_\_\_ the officer did not pay attention to his words.
- 4) The night passed, he was tired, \_\_\_\_\_ he was still looking for his little friend.
- 5) He could not get food, \_\_\_\_\_ the thieves had stolen all his money.

**5 Fill in the missing prepositions.**

- 1) It was getting dark but Miles Hendon was still walking \_\_\_\_\_ the streets \_\_\_\_\_ London looking \_\_\_\_\_ his little friend.
- 2) The officer came \_\_\_\_\_, but this time he bowed \_\_\_\_\_ Miles Hendon.
- 3) The officer left him \_\_\_\_\_ the middle \_\_\_\_\_ the hall.
- 4) He saw the king \_\_\_\_\_ the kingdom \_\_\_\_\_ dreams \_\_\_\_\_ the throne.
- 5) Miles Hendon walked \_\_\_\_\_ the wall, took \_\_\_\_\_ a chair, brought it \_\_\_\_\_, put it \_\_\_\_\_ the floor noisily, and sat down \_\_\_\_\_ it.
- 6) The king held \_\_\_\_\_ his hand and stopped the officer.
- 7) The king ordered the soldiers to throw Sir Hugh \_\_\_\_\_ prison, and they led him \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8) The king promised that he would take care \_\_\_\_\_ Tom's mother and sisters.
- 9) They will never suffer \_\_\_\_\_ hunger any more.
- 10) Miles Hendon did not know where to hide his head \_\_\_\_\_ shame.
- 11) Tom Canty rose \_\_\_\_\_ his knees and hurried home \_\_\_\_\_ the good news.



**1 Say why:**

- 1) Miles Hendon had no money at all when he came to London.
- 2) Miles Hendon was tired and hungry.
- 3) he did not want to beg for food.
- 4) Miles Hendon wanted to find his father's old friend Sir Humphrey Marlow.
- 5) it was out of the question for him to get into the palace.
- 6) the whipping-boy was surprised when Hendon asked him about his father.
- 7) Miles Hendon was arrested, disarmed, and searched.
- 8) the officer decided to take the letter to the king.
- 9) the same officer bowed to Miles Hendon when he came back from the palace.
- 10) Miles Hendon sat down in the presence of the king.
- 11) the king called Miles Hendon his true servant.
- 12) Miles Hendon received much gold and land from the king.
- 13) Miles Hendon did not see his brother Hugh and Lady Edith.
- 14) Miles Hendon wanted to hide his head from shame.
- 15) Hugh was taken to prison.
- 16) Tom's clothes were different from other people's clothes.

17) the king said that he would take care of Tom's mother and sisters.

18) Tom went home happy and proud.

**2 Prove that:**

- 1) Miles Hendon was worried about his little friend.
- 2) Miles Hendon was a proud man.
- 3) Miles Hendon hoped to get justice in the palace.
- 4) Miles Hendon believed in his little friend's promise.
- 5) the king knew how to thank his true servants.

**3 Add more details to the following:**

- 1) Miles Hendon had made many miles.
- 2) He came up to the palace.
- 3) The officer saw a stranger near the palace.
- 4) Hendon found himself in a large hall.
- 5) Suddenly a good idea came to Miles Hendon.
- 6) The king said that Miles Hendon was his true servant.
- 7) Miles Hendon looked at the king and felt shame.
- 8) Tom Canty appeared in the hall.
- 9) The king was pleased with Tom Canty.
- 10) Tom hurried home.

**4 Imagine that you are:**

- **Tom Canty.** Describe your feelings about the good news.
- **Miles Hendon.** Say why you felt shame, and why you were thankful to Edward.

- **Edward.** Say why you were thankful to Miles Hendon, to Tom Canty.
- **The officer** who stopped Miles Hendon. Describe the situation.

**5 Act out the talk between:**

- Miles Hendon and the whipping-boy.
- Miles Hendon and the officer.

**6 What is your opinion?**

The king said about Tom Canty: “You had kindness and mercy.” What do you think of the king? Can you say the same words about him? Give reasons for your answer.

## Chapter XXXIV EDWARD AS THE KING

Edward was a kind, merciful king. As long as he lived<sup>1</sup> he liked to tell the story of his adventures. All about them, from the moment when the guard pushed him away from the palace gates till the midnight when he got into the crowd of workmen and so was able to enter the Abbey.<sup>2</sup> Then he climbed up and hid himself in a corner. He slept so long next day, that he almost missed the coronation.

<sup>1</sup> **As long as he lived** — До конца своих дней

<sup>2</sup> **and so was able [eɪbl] to enter the Abbey** — и таким образом смог попасть в собор

He always said that he remembered all people who suffered because of the cruel laws of England.

The king found the farmer who had been sold as a slave<sup>1</sup> and helped him to start a new life.

He also took out of prison the old man who had written a pamphlet against the Lord Chancellor and was sentenced to stay in prison all his life for that.

He gave good homes to the daughters of the two Baptist women whom he saw burned on the fire.<sup>2</sup> He punished the officer who had ordered lashes upon Miles Hendon's back.

He saved from death the boy who had found a hawk that had flown away from its owner.

He was going to free the man that had killed a deer in the royal forest, but it was too late to save him: the man was already dead.

Yes, Edward was kind and merciful to the people of England.

“I shall never forget what I have seen,” he often said. “I shall see it all the days of my life.”

Miles learned from Edith what had really happened during his absence from England: Hugh ordered her to say that she did not know Miles.

“If you don't say it, I shall kill both of you,” he had said to her. Later Hugh left his wife and went over to the Continent, where he died soon. Miles Hendon married Edith after Hugh's death and Hendon village celebrated when they came to Hendon Hall.

<sup>1</sup> **found the farmer who had been sold as a slave** — нашел фермера, проданного в рабство

<sup>2</sup> **whom he saw burned on the fire** — которых на его глазах сожгли на костре

Tom Canty lived happily a very long life. He was a white-haired old man clothed in a costume that looked different from any other man's clothes.<sup>1</sup> Everybody paid attention to him when he appeared in the streets of London. People whispered to each other:

"Take your hat off, it is the King's Ward!"

## Activities

### ? *Checking Comprehension*

#### 1 Say what:

- 1) the king liked to tell.
- 2) he almost missed.
- 3) the people were suffered of.
- 4) the king did for the farmer who had been sold as a slave.
- 5) the king did for the old man who had written a pamphlet.
- 6) the king did for the two daughters of the women who had been burned on the fire.
- 7) the king did for the officer who had ordered lashes upon Miles Hendon.
- 8) the king did for the boy who had found a hawk.
- 9) the king did for the man who had killed a deer in the royal forest.
- 10) the king could not forget.
- 11) Miles Hendon learned from Edith.

<sup>1</sup> looked different from any other man's clothes — отличалась от одежды других людей

12) Hugh had said to Edith.

13) the people whispered when they saw Tom Canty in the streets of London.

#### 2 Say whether the statement is true or false. Correct the false one.

- 1) Edward was a good king.
- 2) When he grew old he could not remember everything about his adventures.
- 3) Edward tried to help the people who had suffered because of the cruel laws of England.
- 4) Edward took out of prison the farmer.
- 5) Edward could not help the old man who had been sentenced to stay in prison all his life.
- 6) Edward took to the palace the daughters of the women who had been burned on the fire.
- 7) Edward saved the boy who had found a hawk.
- 8) Edward freed the man who had killed a deer in the royal forest.
- 9) Hugh and Edith went over to the Continent.
- 10) Miles Hendon returned to Hendon Hall very soon.
- 11) Tom Canty lived in the palace a long and happy life.

#### 3 Answer the following questions.

- 1) What stories did Edward like to tell?
- 2) How was he able to enter the Abbey?
- 3) What farmer did the king find to help him?
- 4) Who did Edward take out of prison?
- 5) Who did Edward give good homes?
- 6) Who did he save from death?

- 7) Who was it late to save?
- 8) Who was the king kind and merciful to?
- 9) Where did Hugh go over?
- 10) Where did Hugh die?
- 11) What event did Hendon Village celebrate?
- 12) What made Tom Canty different from other people?
- 13) What did the people whisper when Tom Canty appeared in the streets of London?

- 11) to order
- 12) to save
- 13) to find
- 14) to fly
- 15) to push
- 16) to kill
- 17) to forget
- 18) to appear
- 19) to whisper
- 20) to take off

- k) the story
- l) into the crowd
- m) a new life
- n) the coronation
- o) because of the cruel laws
- p) on the fire
- q) a hat
- r) to each other
- s) something
- t) from death

### Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

#### 1 Say what the italicized words mean.

- 1) Edward was a kind and *merciful* king.
- 2) Edward liked to tell the story of his *adventures*.
- 3) Edward *climbed up* and hid himself in the corner.
- 4) Edward slept *so long* that he almost *missed* the coronation.

#### 2 Match the words in two columns. Use them to describe the events from the story.

- |                |                         |
|----------------|-------------------------|
| 1) to tell     | a) out of prison        |
| 2) to get      | b) in a corner          |
| 3) to hide     | c) the officer          |
| 4) to miss     | d) lashes               |
| 5) to remember | e) a hawk               |
| 6) to suffer   | f) away from the owner  |
| 7) to start    | g) a deer               |
| 8) to take     | h) in the streets       |
| 9) to burn     | i) all people           |
| 10) to punish  | j) away from the palace |

#### 3 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense form.

Edward always (remember) what (happen) to him when he (be) a tramp. He (see) how cruel the English laws (be), and he (try) to change them. He also (help) those people whom he (see) suffer. It (be) he who (give) homes to the little girls whose mothers (be burned) on the fire. He (not to forget) to free the old man who (suffer) because of the pamphlet against the Lord Chancellor. He (be) merciful to the farmer who (be sold) as a slave, to the boy who (find) a hawk that (fly) away from the owner.

### Discussing the Text

#### 1 Say why:

- 1) Edward almost missed the coronation.
- 2) people suffered in England.
- 3) Edward was not able to free the old man who had killed a deer in the royal forest.
- 4) Edward was kind and merciful to the people.

## Revision Vocabulary and Grammar Exercises

- 5) Edith had not told the truth to Miles Hendon.
- 6) everybody paid attention to Tom Canty when he appeared in the streets of London.
- 7) Tom Canty looked different from other people.

### 2 Prove that:

- 1) Edward had a good memory.
- 2) Edward was a kind and merciful king.
- 3) Miles Hendon loved Edith.
- 4) the people of London loved Tom Canty.

### 3 Add more details to the following:

- 1) Edward remembered every day of his adventures.
- 2) Edward remembered the farmer.
- 3) He remembered the old man.
- 4) He remembered the two little girls.
- 5) He did not forget to punish the officer.
- 6) He remembered the boy.
- 7) He was going to free the man.
- 8) Miles Hendon learned the truth from Edith.
- 9) Everybody paid attention to Tom Canty.

### 4 Imagine that you are:

- **Edward.** Say what you have done for the people who had suffered from the cruel English laws.
- **Tom Canty.** Say how your life was as the King's Ward.
- **Miles Hendon.** Say what your life was like at Hendon Hall.
- One of those who suffered from the cruel English laws. Say how the king helped you.

- 1 Complete the sentences with the words from the box. Put them into the correct tense form. They all were used in the story.

a)

get angry get drunk get free get interested get pale get tired
---

- 1) Soon Edward \_\_\_\_\_ in their conversation and learned many interesting things.
- 2) When she turned her face he saw that it \_\_\_\_\_ and unhappy.
- 3) Edward could not \_\_\_\_\_ or make any sound. The 'archangel' tied his legs and hands, and covered his mouth with a rag.
- 4) After a long walk he \_\_\_\_\_, and could hardly stand on his feet.
- 5) When Edward \_\_\_\_\_ he looked like a real king.
- 6) Almost every night John Canty \_\_\_\_\_ and beat his children.

b)

go away go back
--------------------

go in(to)  
go on  
go out (of)  
go over  
go up (to)

- 1) Sir Hugh \_\_\_\_\_ and soon he returned with some soldiers.
- 2) When the tramps \_\_\_\_\_ to the village they decided to enter it from different sides.
- 3) He \_\_\_\_\_ to the king and dropped upon his knee.
- 4) The coronation \_\_\_\_\_, and his face grew pale and unhappy.
- 5) Miles Hendon bought two donkeys, and decided to \_\_\_\_\_ to Hendon Hall the next morning.
- 6) Edward \_\_\_\_\_ the Abbey together with the workmen who were making the last preparations for the coronation.
- 7) Tom \_\_\_\_\_ of the hall and hurried to see his mother and sisters.

c)

look about  
look after  
look around  
look for  
look like

- 1) Edward \_\_\_\_\_ and saw a poor woman and two girls on the dirty floor.

- 2) The leader of the tramps ordered Hugo to \_\_\_\_\_ the king.
- 3) Miles Hendon \_\_\_\_\_ the king all night but could not find him anywhere.
- 4) Edward \_\_\_\_\_ and saw two figures in the distance.
- 5) Now everybody in the hall noticed that the two boys \_\_\_\_\_ twins.

d)

take away  
take for  
take out (of)  
take place  
take prisoner  
take to  
take up

- 1) Tom \_\_\_\_\_ the book \_\_\_\_\_ and began to read it.
- 2) Miles Hendon was \_\_\_\_\_, and spent seven years in a foreign prison.
- 3) The events described in this book \_\_\_\_\_ in the sixteenth century.
- 4) He ordered the officers to \_\_\_\_\_ Miles Hendon and the king \_\_\_\_\_ prison.
- 5) The prince \_\_\_\_\_ something from the table and thought where to put it.
- 6) The old king ordered the servants to \_\_\_\_\_ all the books and let the prince rest.
- 7) It was clear to Tom now that everybody \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_ the prince.

**2 Complete the table. All the words are used in the book.**

Remember: Noun suffixes: -ness, -dom

Adjective suffixes: -less, -full, -ish

Adverb suffix: -ly

Noun	Adjective	Adverb
fear	fearless, fearful	fearlessly
heart		
help		
hope		
home		
care		
mercy		
peace		
power		
thank		
use		
wonder		
child		
fool		
	free	
	busy	busily

Noun	Adjective	Adverb
	clever	
highness	high	
	ill	
	kind	
	mad	
	sad	
	sick	

**3 Say who, when and why:**

was frightened, was pleased, was surprised, was tired, was worried, was clothed, was afraid of, was angry, was asleep, was brave, was busy, was careful, was cruel, was glad, was proud, was sad, was sorry, was sure

**4 Complete the sentences with the words from the box.**

a)

birth birthday born
---------------------------

- Nobody in London celebrated the \_\_\_\_\_ of the pauper.
- Tom was \_\_\_\_\_ on the same day as the Prince of Wales.
- Do you know when Tom's \_\_\_\_\_ was?

## Dear Reader!

b)

die  
dead  
death

- 1) A messenger brought a sad news to Tom that the king was \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2) The \_\_\_\_\_ of the king made Edward suffer very much.
- 3) The king helped the girls whose mother had \_\_\_\_\_ on the fire.

b)

live  
life  
alive

- 1) The prince and the pauper \_\_\_\_\_ in London a long ago.
- 2) Edward liked to tell stories about his \_\_\_\_\_ full of adventures.
- 3) They did not want to believe that Miles Hendon was \_\_\_\_\_.

We hope that you have read the book from cover to cover. You deserve congratulations, then. May be some day you would like to read it in the original. Well, good luck to you!

And now, let's go through the book again trying to remember the most enjoying parts of it, and also see what useful information and knowledge you have got from the book. To do that, try to answer the following questions.

- 1) Did you enjoy reading this story? Was it easy reading?
- 2) Have you learned anything about England of those days, which you did not know before? If you have, what was it?
- 3) What sort of book is this one? Is it a history book? A book of adventures? A fairytale? Give reasons for your choice.
- 4) If you studied the history of England of the 16<sup>th</sup> century, you certainly read about Henry VIII and his son Edward VI to whom the whole book is mainly devoted. What do you know about their rule? Do you think Mark Twain describes the events, which took place during the rule of these kings, or do you think the author invented some of them or all of them?
- 5) Are there any events described in the story that you don't believe at all? If so, which one? Say why you don't believe it.
- 6) Say, which of the events described in the book you are absolutely sure is factual. Explain why you think so.



- 7) Edward VI died young. Do you know at what age he died and why?
- 8) Say which character is most sympathetic to you. Why? In which event do you like him (her) best? What for?
- 9) Say which character you don't like at all. Why? In which event do you think he (she) is the worst?
- 10) How old do you think were the boys – Edward and Tom Canty? Why do you think so?
- 11) Both Edward and Tom found themselves in very unusual and difficult situations. Who do you think suffered more? Why? Who do you think overcame (преодолел) difficulties easier, Tom or Edward? Why? Give examples.
- 12) Do you think the story has a happy end? Prove it with facts from the book.
- 13) What about Tom's father? What do you think of him? Does the author say anything about him at the end of the book? What do you think could happen to him?
- 14) Can you think of another end for this story? Think it over and write down, then read it to your classmates. Choose the best composition.
- 15) If you go to London some day, which of the places described in the book, would you like to see with your own eyes (Offal Court, London Bridge, Hendon Hall, Westminster Abbey, etc)? Why? Do you think you will be able to find all of them? Why do you think so?

## Vocabulary

### A

- across** [ə'krɒs] *prep* через, но
- afraid** [ə'freɪd] *a* испуганный
- be afraid (of)** боять(ся), испугать(ся)
- against** [ə'geɪnst] *prep* против; к, за
- ah** [ɑ:] *int* ах!, а! (*выражает удивление, сожаление, мольбу*)
- air** [eə] *n* воздух
- alas** [ə'la:s]! *int* увы!
- alike** [ə'laɪk] *a* похожий, подобный; *adv* одинаково
- be alike** быть похожим
- alive** [ə'laɪv] *a* живой
- allow** [ə'laʊ] *v* разрешать, позволять
- almost** ['ɔ:lməʊst] *adv* почти
- alone** [ə'ləʊn] *a* один, одинокий
- leave alone** оставить в покое
- aloud** [ə'laʊd] *adv* громко; вслух
- always** ['ɔ:lwəz] *adv* всегда
- among** [ə'mʌŋ] *prep* между, среди (*нескольких лиц или предметов*)
- anger** [ˈæŋɡə] *n* гнев
- angrily** [ˈæŋɡrɪli] *adv* сердито, гневно
- angry** [ˈæŋɡrɪ] *a* сердитый, разгневанный, раздраженный
- be angry** сердиться
- get angry** рассердиться
- make angry** рассердить
- anthem** [ˈænthəm] *n* гимн

**apartment** [ə'pɑ:tmənt] *n* помещение, комната; *pl* апартаменты  
**appear** [ə'piə] *v* появляться  
**archangel** ['ɑ:k,emdʒəl] *n* архангел  
**arm** [ɑ:m] *v* вооружать(ся)  
**armed** [ɑ:md] *a* вооруженный  
**arms** [ɑ:mz] *n pl* оружие  
**around** [ə'raʊnd] *prep* вокруг, около; *adv* всюду, кругом  
**as** [æz] *conj* как, когда, в то время как, пока; так как  
**as if** как будто  
**aside** [ə'saɪd] *adv* в сторону  
**asleep** [ə'sli:p] *a* спящий  
**be asleep** спать  
**fall asleep** заснуть  
**attention** [ə'tenʃn] *n* внимание  
**pay attention (to)** обращать внимание (на)  
**attentively** [ə'tentɪvli] *adv* внимательно  
**awaken** [ə'weɪkən] *v* будить, разбудить  
**away** [ə'weɪ] *adv* (обозначает отдаление от данного места) далеко, прочь

## В

**baby** ['beɪbɪ] *n* ребенок, младенец  
**band** [bænd] *n* банда, шайка  
**banner** ['bænə] *n* флаг  
**banquet** ['bæŋkwɪt] *n* пир, званый обед  
**bar** [bɑ:] *n* прут; *pl* решетка  
**barge** [bɑ:dʒ] *n* баржа  
**barn** [bɑ:n] *n* сарай, амбар  
**battle** ['bætl] *n* битва

**beast** [bi:st] *n* животное, зверь  
**beat** [bi:t] (**beat, beaten**) *v* бить, ударять, колотить  
**beating** ['bi:tɪŋ] *n* битье, порка; *pl* побои  
**because of** [bi'kɔz ɒv] из-за; вследствие  
**beg** [beg] *v* просить, попрошайничать, нищенствовать  
**beg pardon** извиняться; просить прощения, извинения  
**beggar** ['begə] *n* нищий  
**believe** [bi'li:v] *v* верить, поверить  
**birth** [bɜ:θ] *n* рождение  
**blanket** ['blæŋkɪt] *n* одеяло  
**blind** [blaɪnd] *a* слепой  
**blood** [blʌd] *n* кровь  
**blow** [bləʊ] (**blew, blown**) *v* дуть, веять  
**blow** [bləʊ] *n* удар  
**bone** [bəʊn] *n* кость  
**born** [bɔ:n] *a* рожденный  
**be born** родиться  
**both** [bəʊθ] *pron* оба, и тот и другой  
**bow** [baʊ] *v* наклоняться, кланяться  
**brave** [breɪv] *a* храбрый  
**break** [breɪk] (**broke, broken**) *v* ломать(ся), разбивать(ся)  
**break someone's neck** сломать шею кому-либо  
**break someone's heart** разбить чье-либо сердце  
**breathe** [bri:ð] *v* дышать  
**bride** [braɪd] *n* невеста  
**bridge** [brɪdʒ] *n* мост  
**bruise** [bru:z] *n* синяк, ушиб; *v* ушибить, ставить синяки  
**bucket** ['bʌkɪt] *n* ведро  
**burn** [bɜ:n] *v* гореть; жечь, сжигать

**bury** [ˈberi] (**buried, buried**) *v* хоронить  
**business** [ˈbizɪns] *n* дело, занятие  
**busy** [ˈbɪzi] *a* занят(ой); *v* заниматься  
**busy oneself** заниматься

## С

**cabinet** [ˈkæbɪnɪt] *n* кабинет  
**candle** [ˈkændl] *n* свеча  
**care** [keə] *n* забота  
**take care of somebody** заботиться о ком-либо  
**careful** [ˈkeəfʊl] *a* осторожный  
**catch** [kætʃ] (**caught, caught**) *v* поймать, схватить; ловить  
**celebrate** [ˈselɪbreɪt] *v* праздновать  
**century** [ˈsentʃəri] *n* столетие, век  
**ceremony** [ˈserɪməni] *n* церемония, этикет  
**chance** [tʃɑːns] *n* случай, возможность  
**Chancellor** [ˈtʃɑːns(ə)lɪə] *n* канцлер  
**change** [tʃeɪndʒ] *n* перемена; *v* менять(ся), переменить, сменить  
**chapter** [ˈtʃæptə] *n* глава (*книги*)  
**childish** [ˈtʃaɪldɪʃ] *a* детский  
**church** [tʃɜːtʃ] *n* церковь  
**clear** [klɪə] *a* ясный, понятный  
**clever** [ˈklevə] *a* умный, способный, искусный  
**cleverness** [ˈklevənis] *n* одаренность, ловкость  
**close** [kləʊs] *v* закрывать(ся)  
**close** [kləʊs] *a* близкий; *adv* близко  
**cloth** [klɒθ] *n* сукно, материя  
**clothe** [kləʊð] *v* одевать(ся)  
**clothed** [kləʊðd] *a* одетый

**command** [kəˈmɑːnd] *n* приказ, команда; *v* приказывать  
**company** [ˈkʌmpəni] *n* компания, общество  
**continue** [kənˈtɪnjuː] *v* продолжать(ся)  
**coronation** [ˌkɒrəˈneɪʃn] *n* коронация  
**cost** [kɒst] *n* цена, стоимость; (**cost, cost**) *v* стоить  
**council** [ˈkaʊnsl] *n* совет  
**court** [kɔːt] *n* двор (*королевский*); двор (*дома*); суд  
**court doctor** придворный врач  
**Offal Court** Двор отбросов  
**prison court** тюремный двор  
**cousin** [ˈkʌzn] *n* двоюродный брат, двоюродная сестра; кузен, кузина  
**cover** [ˈkʌvə] *v* покрывать, укрывать  
**cover oneself** укрываться  
**crack** [kræk] *v* колоть (*орехи*)  
**crime** [kraɪm] *n* преступление  
**crowd** [kraʊd] *n* толпа  
**crown** [kraʊn] *n* корона; *v* короновать  
**cruel** [kruəl] *a* жестокий  
**cruelly** [ˈkruəli] *adv* жестоко  
**cry** [kraɪ] *n* крик; *v* кричать; плакать  
**cry out** вскрикнуть, воскликнуть  
**cut** [kʌt] (**cut, cut**) *v* резать, вырезать  
**cut off** отрезать, отрубать

## D

**danger** [ˈdeɪndʒə] *n* опасность  
**dead** [ded] *a* мертв(ый); безжизненный, вялый, унылый  
**be dead** умереть

**death** [deθ] *n* смерть  
**deep** [di:p] *a* глубокий  
**deeply** [ˈdi:pli] *adv* глубоко  
**deer** [diə] *n* олень  
**defend** [diˈfend] *v* защищать  
**definite** [ˈdefɪnɪt] *a* определенный  
**dessert** [diˈzɜ:t] *n* десерт, сладкое (*блюдо*)  
**devil** [ˈdevl] *n* дьявол, черт  
**die** [daɪ] *v* умирать  
**different** [ˈdɪfrənt] *a* другой, не такой; отличный, несходный; различный, разный  
**dine** [daɪn] *v* обедать  
**disappear** [ˌdɪsəˈpiə] *v* исчезать  
**disappearance** [ˌdɪsəˈpiərəns] *n* исчезновение  
**disarm** [dɪsˈɑ:m] *v* обезоружить  
**dishonest** [dɪsˈɒnɪst] *a* бессовестный, нечестный  
**donkey** [ˈdɒŋki] *n* осел  
**drag** [dræɡ] *v* (с усилием) тащить(ся), тянуть(ся)  
**draw** [drɔ:] (**drew, drawn**) *v* тянуть, тащить  
**dream** [dri:m] *n* сон; мечта, греза; (**dreamed, dreamt**) *v* видеть во сне; мечтать, грезить  
**drive** [draɪv] (**drove, driven**) *v* гнать, погонять, прогонять  
**drop** [drɒp] *v* падать, упасть  
**drown** [draʊn] *v* тонуть, топиться(ся)  
**drunk** [drʌŋk]: **get drunk** напиваться  
**drunken** [ˈdrʌŋkən] *a* пьяный  
**duke** [dju:k] *n* герцог

## Е

**early** [ˈɜ:li] *a* ранний; *adv* рано  
**earn** [ɜ:n] *v* зарабатывать

**elder** [ˈeldə] *a* старший  
**else** [els] *adv* (с неопределен. и вопросит. местоимениями) еще; кроме  
**end** [end] *n* конец; окончание; *v* кончать(ся)  
**enemy** [ˈenɪmi] *n* враг, противник  
**enough** [ɪˈnʌf] *adv* достаточно, довольно  
**enter** [ˈentə] *v* входить  
**especially** [ɪˈspeʃəli] *adv* особенно; специально  
**etiquette** [ˈetɪket] *n* этикет  
**even** [ˈi:vən] *adv* даже  
**ever** [ˈevə] *adv* всегда; когда-либо  
**everybody** [ˈevri:bɒdi] *pron* все, каждый, всякий  
**everything** [ˈevriθɪŋ] *pron* всё  
**examination** [ɪɡˌzæmɪˈneɪʃn] *n* экзамен, испытание, проверка  
**excuse** [ɪksˈkju:z] *v* извинять  
**execution** [ˌeksɪˈkju:ʃn] *n* казнь

## F

**fall** [fɔ:l] (**fell, fallen**) *v* падать; опускаться  
**fall asleep** заснуть  
**fall down** упасть  
**fall on one's knees** пасть на колени  
**false** [fɔ:ls] *a* ложный, фальшивый  
**farm-house** [ˈfɑ:mhaʊs] *n* жилой дом на ферме  
**farthest** [ˈfɑ:ðɪst] (*превосх. степень от far*) *a* самый дальний  
**farthing** [ˈfɑ:ðɪŋ] *n* фартинг  
**fat** [fæt] *a* толстый, полный  
**fear** [fiə] *n* страх; *v* бояться  
**feel** [fi:l] (**felt, felt**) *v* чувствовать (*себя*)

**feel sleepy** (за)хотеть спать  
**feel sorry** (по)жалеть  
**few** [fju:] *pron* немного, немногие, мало  
**fight** [faɪt] *n* драка; (**fought, fought**) *v* сражаться, драться  
**figure** ['fɪɡə] *n* фигура  
**fill** [fɪl] *v* наполнять(ся)  
**find** [faɪnd] (**found, found**) *v* находить, найти  
**find oneself** очутиться, оказаться  
**find out** узнать  
**finger** ['fɪŋɡə] *n* палец (*руки*)  
**fire** ['faɪə] *n* огонь; камин; очаг; огонь  
**firewood** ['faɪəwud] *n* дрова  
**fly** [flaɪ] (**flew, flown**) *v* летать  
**follow** ['fɒləʊ] *v* следовать, последовать  
**following** ['fɒləʊɪŋ] *a* следующий  
**fool** [fu:l] *n* дурак, глупец; шут  
**foolish** ['fu:lɪʃ] *a* глупый  
**forever** [fə'vevə] *adv* навсегда  
**forward** ['fɔ:wəd] *adv* вперед  
**free** [fri:] *a* свободный, *v* освобождать  
**free oneself** освобождаться  
**freedom** ['fri:dəm] *n* свобода  
**frighten** ['fraɪtən] *v* (ис)пугать  
**frightened** ['fraɪtənd] *a* испуганный  
**full** [fʊl] *a* полный

## G

**gallop** ['gæləp] *v* скакать галопом  
**game** [geɪm] *n* игра  
**gate** [geɪt] *n* калитка; *pl* ворота

**gentleman** ['dʒentlmən] *n* джентельмен  
**get** [get] (**got, got**) *v* получать, доставать; становиться, делаться; добираться  
**get angry** рассердиться  
**get drunk** напиться, напиваться  
**get free** освобождаться  
**get interested** заинтересоваться  
**get in (to)** попадать в  
**get out (of)** выбирать(ся) из, выходить, убираться прочь  
**get pale** побледнеть  
**get red** покраснеть  
**get tired** уставать  
**get to** добираться до  
**glad** [glæd] *a* довольный, радостный  
**be glad** радоваться, быть довольным  
**go** [gəʊ] (**went, gone**) *v* идти, ходить, пойти; ехать; уходить, уезжать, отправляться  
**go away** уходить  
**go back** возвращаться  
**go in (to)** входить в  
**go on** продолжать (идти); проходить  
**go over** подходить  
**go up (to)** подходить (к)  
**gold** [gəʊld] *n* золото  
**golden** ['gəʊldn] *a* золотой  
**good** [gʊd] *n* добро, благо, польза; *a* хороший, добрый, доброжелательный  
**good-hearted** ['gʊd'hɑ:tɪd] *a* добрый  
**greet** [gri:t] *v* приветствовать  
**grey** [greɪ] *a* серый; седой  
**groan** [grəʊn] *n* стон; *v* стонать

**ground** [graʊnd] *n* земля, почва  
**grow** [grəʊ] (**grew, grown**) *v* (с)делаться, становиться;  
расти  
**guard** [ɡɑ:d] *n* стража, охрана, караул; гвардия; *v* охранять

## Н

**hairdresser** [ˈheə,dresə] *n* парикмахер  
**hairdressing** [ˈheə,dresɪŋ] *n* прическа; причесывание  
**hand** [hænd] *v* вручать  
**hang** [hæŋ] (**hung, hung**) *v* вешать; подвешивать, развешивать; (**hanged, hanged**) вешать (*казнить*)  
**happen** [ˈhæpən] *v* случаться, происходить  
**hard** [hɑ:d] *a* твердый; трудный, тяжелый; усердный, упорный, *adv* сильно; тяжело; усердно, упорно  
**hate** [heit] *v* ненавидеть  
**heart** [hɑ:t] *n* сердце  
**heavy** [ˈhevi] *a* тяжелый  
**helpless** [ˈhelpɪs] *a* беспомощный  
**hermit** [ˈhɜ:mit] *n* отшельник  
**hide** [haɪd] (**hid, hidden**) *v* прятать(ся)  
**highness** [ˈhaɪnis] *n* высочество (*титул*)  
**hold** [həʊld] (**held, held**) *v* держать  
**hold out** протягивать  
**hole** [həʊl] *n* дыра  
**holy** [ˈhəʊli] *a* святой  
**home** [həʊm] *n* дом, жилище; *adv* домой  
**homeless** [ˈhəʊmlɪs] *a* бездомный  
**honest** [ˈɒnɪst] *a* честный  
**honour** [ˈɒnə] *n* честь

**hope** [həʊp] *n* надежда; *v* надеяться  
**horror** [ˈhɒrə] *n* ужас  
**hunger** [ˈhʌŋɡə] *n* голод  
**hungry** [ˈhʌŋɡri] *a* голодный  
**be hungry** хотеть есть, быть голодным  
**go hungry** голодать  
**hurry** [ˈhʌri] *n* торопливость, поспешность; *v* спешить, торопиться  
**hut** [hʌt] *n* хижина

## I

**idea** [aɪˈdɪə] *n* идея, понятие  
**illness** [ˈɪlnɪs] *n* болезнь  
**imagine** [ɪˈmædʒɪn] *v* воображать (*себе*)  
**inn** [ɪn] *n* гостиница, постоялый двор  
**instruct** [ɪnˈstrʌkt] *v* учить, обучать, инструктировать; наставлять  
**instruction** [ɪnˈstrʌkʃn] *n* инструкция; наставление; указание  
**interested** [ˈɪntrɪstɪd] *a* заинтересованный  
**get interested** заинтересоваться  
**invitation** [ˌɪnvɪˈteɪʃn] *n* приглашение  
**invite** [ɪnˈvaɪt] *v* приглашать  
**itch** [ɪtʃ] *v* зудеть, чесаться

## J

**joy** [dʒɔɪ] *n* радость  
**judge** [dʒʌdʒ] *n* судья  
**jump** [dʒʌmp] *v* прыгать  
**justice** [ˈdʒʌstɪs] *n* правосудие

## К

**keep** [ki:p] (**kept, kept**) *v* держать, хранить  
**keep away** держаться подальше  
**kill** [kɪl] *v* убивать, убить  
**kind** [kaɪnd] *a* добрый, любезный  
**kindly** ['kaɪndli] *adv* с добротой, добросердечно, ласково  
**kindness** ['kaɪndnɪs] *n* доброта  
**king** [kɪŋ] *n* король  
**kingdom** ['kɪŋdəm] *n* королевство  
**kiss** [kɪs] *n* поцелуй; *v* целовать  
**knee** [ni:] *n* колено

## L

**lad** [læd] *n* мальчик, паренек  
**lady** ['leɪdɪ] *n* леди; дама, госпожа  
**land** [lænd] *n* земля; земельная собственность; *p/* поместья  
**language** ['læŋgwɪdʒ] *n* язык, речь  
**lash** [læʃ] *n* плеть; удар плетью; *v* бить плетью  
**later** ['leɪtə] *adv* позже; потом, после  
**Latin** ['lætɪn] *n* латинский (язык)  
**laugh** [lɑ:f] *n* смех; *v* смеяться  
**laughter** ['lɑ:ftə] *n* смех  
**law** [lɔ:] *n* закон  
**lay** [leɪ] (**laid, laid**) *v* класть, положить; накрывать  
**lead** [li:d] (**led, led**) *v* вести  
**leader** ['li:də] *n* предводитель, вожак  
**leave** [li:v] (**left, left**) *v* оставлять, покидать  
**leave alone** оставлять в покое

**legend** ['ledʒənd] *n* легенда  
**let** [let] (**let, let**) *v* позволять, разрешать, пускать  
**let alone** оставить в покое  
**let in** впускать  
**let go** отпускать  
**let us go** пойдём(те)  
**lie** [laɪ] (**lay, lain**) *v* лежать  
**lie down** ложиться  
**lie** [laɪ] *n* ложь, неправда  
**tell a lie** лгать, говорить неправду  
**light** [laɪt] *n* свет, огонь; (**lit, lit**) *v* зажигать, зажечь; освещать(ся)  
**light** [laɪt] *a* легкий (*no весу*)  
**like** [laɪk] *a* похожий, подобный; *prep* как, подобно  
**be like; look like** быть похожим, походить (на)  
**living** ['lɪvɪŋ] *a* живой  
**long** [lɒŋ] *adv* долго  
**long live** да здравствует  
**not for long** ненадолго  
**look** [lʊk] *n* взгляд; *v* смотреть, глядеть; казаться, выглядеть  
**look about** осматриваться  
**look after** присматривать за, опекать  
**look around** оглядываться  
**look for** искать (*кого-либо или что-либо*)  
**look like** быть похожим  
**give a look** взглянуть  
**lord** [lɔ:d] *n* лорд  
**my lord** милорд (*титул и обращение*)  
**lose** [lu:z] (**lost, lost**) *v* терять  
**lose one's way** заблудиться  
**loud** [laʊd] *a* громкий

**loudly** [ˈlaʊdli] *adv* громко

**lovingly** [ˈlʌvɪŋli] *adv* с любовью

## М

**mad** [mæd] *a* сумасшедший

**madness** [ˈmædnɪs] *n* сумасшествие

**majesty** [ˈmædʒɪsti] *n* величество (*титул*)

**make** [meɪk] (**made, made**) *v* (с)делать; заставлять

**make angry** (рас)сердить

**make sad** (о)печалить

**manner** [ˈmænə] *n* манера (*говорить, действовать*)

**mantle** [ˈmæntl] *n* мантия

**marriage** [ˈmæɪdʒ] *n* женитьба, свадьба

**master** [ˈmɑːstə] *n* хозяин, господин, властелин

**matter** [ˈmætə] *n* дело, вопрос

**it does not matter** это неважно, это не имеет значения

**may** [meɪ] (**might**) *v* могу, может, можешь *и т. д.* (*выражает возможность и разрешение*)

**maybe** [ˈmeɪbi] *adv* может быть, возможно

**meal** [mi:l] *n* еда, принятие пищи

**mean** [mi:n] (**meant, meant**) *v* значить, означать; иметь

в виду, подразумевать, хотеть сказать

**memory** [ˈmeməri] *n* память

**merciful** [ˈmɜːsɪfʊl] *a* милосердный

**mercy** [ˈmɜːsi] *n* милосердие

**messenger** [ˈmesɪndʒə] *n* гонец

**midnight** [ˈmɪdnɑɪt] *n* полночь

**mile** [maɪl] *n* миля (=1609 м)

**mirror** [ˈmɪrə] *n* зеркало

**miss** [mɪs] *v* пропустить, разойтись

**mistaken** [mɪsˈteɪkɪn]: **be mistaken** ошибаться

**moan** [məʊn] *n* стон; *v* стонать

**mock** [mɒk] *a* поддельный, фальшивый; *v* насмеяться

**mockingly** [ˈmɒkɪŋli] *adv* насмешливо

**moment** [ˈməʊmənt] *n* миг, мгновение, момент, минута

**in a moment** через мгновение, (минуту)

**the next moment** в следующее мгновение

**monk** [mɒŋk] *n* монах

**move** [mu:v] *v* двигать(ся)

**mud** [mʌd] *n* грязь

## N

**napkin** [ˈnæpkiŋ] *n* салфетка

**narrow** [ˈnæɹəʊ] *a* узкий

**nearly** [ˈniəli] *adv* рядом

**neck** [nek] *n* шея

**need** [ni:d] *n* нужда; *v* нуждаться (*в чем-либо*)

**never** [ˈnevə] *adv* никогда

**nobody** [ˈnəʊbədi] *pron* никто, никого

**noise** [nɔɪz] *n* шум

**noisily** [ˈnɔɪzɪli] *adv* шумно, с шумом

**noisy** [ˈnɔɪzi] *a* шумный

**nothing** [ˈnʌθɪŋ] *pron* ничто, ничего

**nut** [nʌt] *n* орех

## O

**obey** [əˈbeɪ] *v* повиноваться

**offal** [ˈɒfəl] *n* отбросы, объедки



**offer** [ˈɒfə] *v* предлагать  
**once** [wʌns] *adv* однажды, один раз  
    **at once** немедленно, сразу  
    **once more** еще раз, снова, опять  
**order** [ˈɔ:də] *n* приказ; *v* приказывать  
**organize** [ˈɔ:gənaɪz] *v* организовывать  
**own** [əʊn] *a* собственный; *v* владеть, признавать своим  
**owner** [ˈəʊnə] *n* обладатель

## Р

**package** [ˈpækɪdʒ] *n* пакет, сверток  
**page** [peɪdʒ] *n* паж  
**palace** [ˈpælɪs] *n* дворец  
**paper** [ˈpeɪpə] *n* бумага, документ  
**pardon** [ˈpɑ:dn] *n* прощение, извинение  
    **beg pardon** извиняться, просить прощения  
**part** [pɑ:t] *n* часть; роль  
    **play part** играть роль  
    **take part (in)** принимать участие  
**pass** [pɑ:s] *v* проходить  
**pauper** [ˈpɔ:pə] *n* нищий, бедняк  
**pay** [peɪ] (**paid, paid**) *v* платить  
    **pay attention (to)** обращать внимание (на)  
**peace** [pi:s] *n* мир, спокойствие, тишина  
    **in peace** в покое  
**peasant** [ˈpezənt] *n* крестьянин  
**pence** [pens] *pl* от penny  
**penny** [ˈpenɪ] (*pl pence*) *n* пенни, пенс (самая мелкая английская монета)  
**perhaps** [pəˈhæps] *adv* может быть, возможно

**person** [ˈpɜ:sn] *n* лицо, должность  
**pig** [pɪg] *n* свинья, поросенок  
**pillory** [ˈpɪləri] *n* колодки, позорный столб  
**pleasant** [ˈplezənt] *a* приятный  
**pleased** [pli:zd] *a* довольный  
    **be pleased** быть довольным  
**police** [pəˈli:s] *n* полиция  
    **police officer** полицейский  
**poor** [pʊə] *a* бедный  
**pope** [pəʊp] *n* папа римский  
**possible** [ˈpɒsəbl] *a* возможный  
**post** [pəʊst] *n* пост, должность  
**power** [ˈpaʊə] *n* сила; мощь; способность; власть  
**pray** [preɪ] *v* молиться  
**presence** [ˈprezəns] *n* присутствие  
**press** [pres] *v* нажимать, прижимать  
**pretend** [prɪˈtend] *v* притворяться  
**pretty** [ˈprɪti] *a* хорошенький, милостивый  
**pride** [praɪd] *n* гордость  
**priest** [pri:st] *n* священник  
**prince** [prɪns] *n* принц  
**princess** [prɪnˈses] *n* принцесса  
**prison** [ˈprɪzn] *n* тюрьма  
    **take to prison** сажать в тюрьму  
**prisoner** [ˈprɪznə] *n* заключенный; пленный  
    **take prisoner** брать в плен  
**procession** [prəˈseʃn] *n* процессия  
**promise** [ˈprɒmɪs] *n* обещание; *v* обещать  
**protest** [ˈprəʊtest] *n* протест  
**proud** [praʊd] *a* гордый  
**proudly** [ˈpraʊdli] *adv* гордо  
**prove** [pru:v] *v* доазывать

**public** [ˈpʌblɪk] *n* народ, публика  
**punish** [ˈpʌnɪʃ] *v* наказывать  
**punishment** [ˈpʌnɪʃmənt] *n* наказание  
**push** [pʊʃ] *v* толкать

**push away** отталкивать  
**push one's way** проталкиваться

**put** [pʊt] (**put, put**) *v* класть, положить; ставить, по-  
тавить

**put away** откладывать, убирать

**put off** откладывать

## Q

**quarrel** [ˈkwɒrəl] *n* ссора, перебранка; *v* ссориться

**quiet** [ˈkwaɪət] *a* тихий; спокойный; молчащий

**be quiet** (за)молчать

**quietly** [ˈkwaɪətli] *adv* спокойно

## R

**ragged** [ˈræɡɪd] *a* оборванный

**rags** [rægz] *n pl* лохмотья

**raise** [reɪz] *v* поднимать, поднять

**reach** [ri:tʃ] *v* достигать, добираться

**real** [riəl] *a* настоящий, реальный, истинный

**really** [ˈri:əli] *adv* действительно, в самом деле

**receive** [rɪˈsi:v] *v* получать, принимать

**report** [rɪˈpɔ:t] *n* отчет

**rest** [rest] *v* отдыхать, отдохнуть

**result** [rɪˈzʌlt] *n* результат

**rich** [rɪtʃ] *a* богатый

**riches** [ˈrɪtʃɪz] *n pl* богатство

**richly** [ˈrɪtʃli] *adv* богато

**rise** [raɪz] (**rose, risen**) *v* подниматься, вставать

**road** [rəʊd] *n* дорога

**royal** [ˈrɔɪəl] *a* королевский

**ruin** [ˈru:ɪn] *v* разрушать, губить, разорять

## S

**sad** [sæd] *a* печальный, грустный

**be sad** грустить

**sadly** [ˈsædli] *adv* печально

**sadness** [ˈsædnɪs] *n* печаль, грусть

**sail** [seɪl] *v* плавать, идти под парусами

**same** [seɪm] *pron* тот же самый

**salute** [səˈlu:t] *v* отдавать честь

**sand** [sænd] *n* песок

**save** [seɪv] *v* спасти

**scratch** [skrætʃ] *v* царапать; чесать

**seal** [si:l] *n* печать; *v* ставить печать

**second-hand** [ˈsekəndˈhænd] *a* подержанный

**secret** [ˈsi:kri:t] *n* тайна, секрет; *a* тайный

**secretary** [ˈsekrətəri] *n* секретарь

**seem** [si:m] *v* казаться

**seize** [si:z] *v* схватить

**sell** [sel] (**sold, sold**) *v* продавать(ся)

**sell oneself** продаваться

**send** [send] (**sent, sent**) *v* посылать

**sentence** [ˈsentəns] *n* приговор; *v* приговаривать,  
осуждать

**servant** [ˈsɜ:vənt] *n* слуга, служанка

**several** [ˈsevrəl] *pron* несколько

**shake** [ˈʃeɪk] (**shook, shaken**) *v* трясти; качать

**shake one's head** качать головой  
**shame** [ʃeɪm] *n* стыд, позор  
**for shame!** стыдно!  
**sheepskin** [ˈʃiːpskɪn] *n* овечья шкура, овчина  
**shilling** [ˈʃɪlɪŋ] *n* шиллинг (*английская монета*)  
**shining** [ˈʃaɪnɪŋ] *a* блестящий, сияющий  
**shoulder** [ˈʃəʊldə] *n* плечо  
**shout** [ʃaʊt] (**at**) *v* кричать (на)  
**show** [ʃəʊ] (**showed, shown**) *v* показывать  
**sick** [sɪk] *a* больной  
**side** [saɪd] сторона, бок  
**side by side** рядом, бок о бок  
**silence** [ˈsaɪləns] *n* молчание, тишина  
**silent** [ˈsaɪlənt] *a* безмолвный, молчаливый  
**be silent** (за)молчать  
**stand silent** стоять молча  
**simple** [ˈsɪmpəl] *a* простой  
**simply** [ˈsɪmpli] *adv* просто  
**since** [sɪns] *conj* с того времени как, с тех пор как; так как  
**sir** [sɜː] *n* сэръ, сударь (*как обращение*)  
**slave** [sleɪv] *n* раб  
**sleepily** [ˈsliːpɪli] *adv* сонливо  
**sleepy** [ˈsliːpi] *a* сонный  
**slowly** [ˈsləʊli] *adv* медленно  
**smile** [smaɪl] *n* улыбка; *v* улыбаться  
**so** [səʊ] *adv* так, итак, таким образом, поэтому  
**so... that** так... что  
**soft** [sɒft] *a* мягкий; тихий (*о звуке*)  
**softly** [ˈsɒftli] *adv* тихо  
**soldier** [ˈsəʊldzə] *n* солдат  
**somebody** [ˈsʌmbədi] *pron* кто-то, кто-нибудь

**someone** [ˈsʌmwʌn] *pron* кто-то, кто-нибудь  
**something** [ˈsʌmθɪŋ] *pron* что-то, что-нибудь  
**sometimes** [ˈsʌmtaɪmz] *adv* иногда  
**sorry** [ˈsɒri] *a* огорченный, полный сожаления  
**I am sorry** виноват, простите  
**be sorry (for)** (со)жалеть  
**feel sorry** чувствовать жалость, жалеть  
**sound** [saʊnd] *n* звук, шум  
**speech** [spiːtʃ] *n* речь  
**stairs** [steəz] *n* лестница  
**down the stairs** вниз по лестнице  
**start** [stɑːt] (**for**) *v* отправляться (*куда-либо*), пускаться в путь  
**state** [steɪt] *n* государство  
**stay** [steɪ] *v* оставаться  
**steal** [stiːl] (**stole, stolen**) *v* (у)красть  
**step** [step] *n* ступенька; шаг; *v* ступать, выступать  
**stick** [stɪk] *n* палка  
**still** [stɪl] *adv* еще, все еще  
**still** [stɪl] *a* тихий, неподвижный  
**storm** [stɔːm] *n* буря, гроза  
**story** [ˈstɔːri] *n* история, рассказ  
**strange** [streɪndʒ] *a* странный  
**stranger** [ˈstreɪndʒə] *n* незнакомец, посторонний человек  
**straw** [strɔː] *n* солома  
**strike** [straɪk] (**struck, struck**) *v* ударить, поражать  
**strike down** ударом свалить с ног  
**strong** [strɒŋ] *a* сильный, крепкий  
**studies** [ˈstʌdɪz] *n pl* занятия, учение  
**study** [ˈstʌdi] *v* учиться  
**such** [sʌtʃ] *pron* такой

**suddenly** [ˈsʌdnli] *adv* вдруг, внезапно  
**suffer** [ˈsʌfə] *v* страдать, пострадать  
**sum** [sʌm] *n* сумма  
**sunshine** [ˈsʌnʃaɪn] *n* солнечный свет  
**sure** [ʃʊə] *a* уверенн(ый)  
    **be sure** быть уверенным  
**surprise** [səˈpraɪz] *n* удивление; *v* удивлять  
    **in surprise** с удивлением  
**surprised** [səˈpraɪzd] *a* удивленный  
**sweet** [swi:t] *a* сладкий; милый, приятный  
**take** [teɪk] (**took, taken**) *v* брать; взять; принимать  
    **take away** убирать  
    **take for someone** принимать за кого-либо  
    **take out (of)** вынимать (из)  
    **take place** иметь место, происходить  
    **take to** вводить, проводить  
    **take up** взять  
**teach** [ti:tʃ] (**taught, taught**) *v* учить (кого-либо), преподавать  
**tear** [tiə] *n* слеза  
**tear** [teə] (**tore, torn**) *v* рвать  
**term** [tɜ:m] *n* срок  
**terrible** [ˈterəbl̩] *a* ужасный  
**thankful** [ˈθæŋkful] *a* благодарный  
**therefore** [ˈðeəfɔ:] *conj* поэтому, следовательно  
**thief** [θi:f] *n* вор  
**think** [θɪŋk] (**thought, thought**) *v* думать, полагать, считать  
    **thought** [θɔ:t] *n* мысль  
**throne** [θrəʊn] *n* трон  
**throne-room** [ˈθrəʊnrʊm] *n* тронный зал  
**through** [θru:] *prep* через, сквозь

**throw** [θrəʊ] (**threw, thrown**) *v* бросать, швырять, кидать  
    **throw back** отбрасывать  
**tie** [taɪ] *v* связывать  
**time** [taɪm] *n* время, раз  
    **from time to time** иногда, время от времени  
**tired** [ˈtaɪəd] *a* усталый, утомленный  
    **be (get) tired** уставать, устать  
**title** [ˈtaɪtl̩] *n* титул  
**together** [təˈgeðə] *adv* вместе  
**too** [tu:] *adv* также, тоже; слишком, очень  
**towards** [təːdz, təˈwɔ:dz] *prep* по направлению к, к  
**tradition** [trəˈdɪʃn] *n* предание  
**tramp** [træmp] *n* бродяга  
**travel** [ˈtrævəl] *n* путешествие; *v* путешествовать  
**traveller** [ˈtrævələ] *n* путешественник  
**tremble** [ˈtreɪbl̩] *v* дрожать  
**trembling** [ˈtreɪblɪŋ] *a* дрожащий  
**trial** [ˈtraɪəl] *n* испытание; судебный процесс  
    **give a trial** испытывать  
**trick** [trɪk] *n* причуда, выходка  
**trip** [trɪp] *n* путешествие  
**trouble** [ˈtrʌbl̩] *n* беда, неприятность  
**true** [tru:] *a* правильный, истинный, настоящий  
**truth** [tru:θ] *n* правда  
**try** [traɪ] *v* стараться, пытаться, пробовать  
**turn** [tɜ:n] *v* вертеть(ся), поворачивать(ся), повертывать(ся); обращаться  
    **turn a corner** заворачивать за угол  
    **turn away** отвернуться; выгонять, прогонять  
    **turn oneself** повернуться  
    **turn out** выгонять  
**twins** [twɪnz] *n pl* близнецы

## U

**undress** [ʌnˈdres] *v* раздевать(ся)  
**unhappy** [ʌnˈhæpi] *a* несчастный  
**untie** [ʌnˈtaɪ] *v* развязывать  
**until** [ənˈtɪl] *conj* до тех пор пока (не)  
**up** [ʌp]: **up and down** вверх и вниз; туда сюда; взад и вперед  
**upon** [əˈpɒn] *prep* на  
**use** [ju:s] *n* польза; [ju:z] *v* употреблять, пользоваться  
**useful** [ˈju:sfʊl] *a* полезный

## V

**voice** [vɔɪs] *n* голос

## W

**wait** [weɪt] (**for**) *v* ждать (кого-нибудь или что-нибудь)  
**war** [wɔ:] *n* война  
**wash-stand** [ˈwɒʃstænd] *n* умывальник  
**watch** [wɒtʃ] *v* следить, наблюдать  
**way** [weɪ] *n* путь; дорога; порядок  
**lose one's way** заблудиться  
**wear** [weə] (**wore, worn**) *v* одевать, носить  
**welcome** [ˈwelkəm] *v* приветствовать; добро пожаловать!  
**while** [waɪl] *conj* пока, в то время как  
**whip** [wɪp] *v* бить, пороть  
**whipping** [ˈwɪpɪŋ] *n* порка, битье  
**whisper** [ˈwɪspə] *v* шептать

**whole** [ˈhəʊl] *pron* весь, целый  
**wide** [waɪd] *a* широкий; *adv* широко  
**wild** [waɪld] *a* дикий  
**wish** [wɪʃ] *n* желание; *v* хотеть  
**witch** [wɪtʃ] *n* ведьма  
**without** [wɪˈðaʊt] *prep* без  
**wonderful** [ˈwʌndəfʊl] *a* замечательный  
**world** [wɜ:ld] *n* мир, свет, вселенная  
**worried** [ˈwɒrɪd] *a* обеспокоенный  
**worry** [ˈwɒrɪ] *v* беспокоиться  
**wounded** [ˈwu:ndɪd] *a* раненый; оскорбленный

## Y

**youth** [ju:θ] *n* юноша

## Содержание

Chapter I. <b>The Prince and the Pauper</b> .....	3
Activities.....	5
Chapter II. <b>Tom's Early Life</b> .....	7
Activities.....	10
Chapter III. <b>Tom's Meeting with the Prince</b> .....	16
Activities.....	22
Chapter IV. <b>The Prince's Troubles Begin</b> .....	29
Activities.....	32
Chapter V. <b>Tom in the King's Palace</b> .....	37
Activities.....	39
Chapter VI. <b>Tom Meets the King</b> .....	43
Activities.....	47
Chapter VII. <b>Tom Receives Instructions</b> .....	53
Activities.....	57
Chapter VIII. <b>Tom's First Royal Dinner</b> .....	62
Activities.....	64
Chapter IX. <b>The Question of the Seal</b> .....	70
Activities.....	71
Chapter X. <b>The Prince in Offal Court</b> .....	74
Activities.....	81
Chapter XI. <b>The Prince and His New Friend</b> .....	87
Activities.....	92
Chapter XII. <b>The Disappearance of the Prince</b> .....	98
Activities.....	100

Chapter XIII. <b>"The King is Dead! — Long Live the King!"</b> .....	104
Activities.....	109
Chapter XIV. <b>The Whipping-Boy</b> .....	114
Activities.....	117
Chapter XV. <b>Tom as King</b> .....	123
Activities.....	125
Chapter XVI. <b>King Foo-Foo the First</b> .....	131
Activities.....	135
Chapter XVII. <b>The Prince with the Tramps</b> .....	142
Activities.....	145
Chapter XVIII. <b>The King among Peasants</b> .....	150
Activities.....	152
Chapter XIX. <b>The Prince and the Hermit</b> .....	158
Activities.....	162
Chapter XX. <b>Hendon Looks for His Friend</b> .....	169
Activities .....	173
Chapter XXI. <b>Hendon Saves the King Again</b> .....	179
Activities.....	181
Chapter XXII. <b>The Prince — a Prisoner</b> .....	187
Activities.....	189
Chapter XXIII. <b>Freedom</b> .....	194
Activities.....	195
Chapter XXIV. <b>Hendon Hall</b> .....	200
Activities.....	206
Chapter XXV. <b>Hendon and the King are Taken to Prison</b> .....	214
Activities.....	217

Chapter XXVI. <b>In Prison</b> .....	221
Activities.....	226
Chapter XXVII. <b>An Execution</b> .....	233
Activities.....	235
Chapter XXVIII. <b>The Sacrifice</b> .....	243
Activities.....	244
Chapter XXIX. <b>To London</b> .....	251
Activities.....	253
Chapter XXX. <b>The Coronation Procession</b> .....	260
Activities.....	263
Chapter XXXI. <b>Coronation Day</b> .....	269
Activities.....	272
Chapter XXXII. <b>Which of Them is the King?</b> .....	279
Activities.....	283
Chapter XXXIII. <b>Miles Hendon in the Palace</b> .....	291
Activities.....	296
Chapter XXXIV. <b>Edward as the King</b> .....	304
Activities.....	306
Revision Vocabulary and Grammar Exercises.....	311
Dear Reader!.....	317
Vocabulary .....	319

*Учебное издание*

**Твен Марк**

**ПРИНЦ И НИЩИЙ**

Составление и адаптация *Г. К. Магидсон-Степановой*  
Упражнения *А. Е. Хабенской*

Ведущий редактор *В. А. Львов*

Редактор *Н. А. Шлепанова*

Художественный редактор *А. М. Драговой*

Иллюстрации *А. Н. Белов*

Оформление обложки *А. М. Кузнецов*

Технический редактор *С. С. Коломеец*

Компьютерная верстка *Г. В. Доронина*

Корректоры *А. А. Вертягина, З. А. Тихонова*

Подписано в печать 01.07.08. Бумага офсетная.  
Формат 60×90/16. Печать офсетная. Печ. л. 22.  
Усл.-печ. л. 22. Тираж 8000 экз. Заказ № 4679.

ООО «Издательство «АЙРИС-пресс»  
113184, Москва, ул. Б. Полянка, д. 50, стр. 3.

ОАО «Тверской ораена Трудового Красного Знамени  
полиграфкомбинат детской литературы им. 50-летия СССР».  
170040, г. Тверь, пр. 50 лет Октября, 46.

